

st

**PREP**

**FIRST TERM**



**ALAWWA**

Gem

**2024**



# Contents

## Module 1 Family and friends

Unit 1	My family and me .....	7
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1 .....	49
Unit 2	It's my favourite subject .....	52
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2 .....	92
Unit 3	Monthly Models on units 1&2 .....	95
	Different people .....	100
Review	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3 .....	137
	Review A .....	140

## Module 2 The world around us

Unit 4	We're using technology! .....	143
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4 .....	180
	Monthly Models on Units 3&4 .....	183
Unit 5	Holidays .....	188
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5 .....	228
Unit 6	Let's eat! .....	231
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6 .....	275
Review	Review B .....	278
	End of Term Practice .....	281
End of the Book	Listening Texts .....	285
	Challenging Questions Answers .....	286

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2023-2024  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Three (SB + WB)	
September	Unit 1	December Unit 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B
October	Unit 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3	January (2024) General Revision
November	Review A + 4 + 5	



## Unit 1

# My family and me

### Objectives of the unit

- Reading** An interview with twin brothers; Heidi; a text about a gymnast
- Writing** A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family
- Listening** An interview with twin brothers
- Speaking** Talking about your family; asking questions
- Language** Pronouns; present simple
- Life Skills** Self-management
- Values** Love of family
- Issues** Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

Tapescripts



WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب



## A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

Family members أفراد الأسرة			
aunt (n)	عمة/خالدة - زوجة العم/الخال	great-grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر (جد الأب/الأم)
daughter (n)	ابنة	great-grandmother (n)	الجددة الكبرى (جدة الأب/الأم)
grandfather (n)	جد	son (n)	ابن
grandmother (n)	جدة	uncle (n)	عم/خال - زوج العمة/الخالدة
Both ذكور وإناث			
cousin (n)	ابن/ابنة (العم/العمة/الخال/الخالدة)	great-grandparents (n)	أجداد الأجداد
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	parents (n)	الوالدان
(be) aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	twin (n)	توعم
diary (n)	مفكرة/يوميات	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

### Additional Vocabulary

### المفردات الإضافية

arrive (d) (v)	يصل	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
busy (adj)	مشغول/مزدحم	sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية
children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	together (adv)	معاً/ سوياً
favourite hobby	هواية مفضلة	use (d) (v)	يستخدم

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **hospital - uncle - hobby - aunt**

- 1 My ..... is called Wafaa.
- 2 Reading is my favourite .....
- 3 My cousin is in the ..... because he's ill.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

## Language Expressions

## التعبيرات اللغوية

music	يعزف موسيقى	make > noise	يصنع ضوضاء
play > chess	يلعب شطرنج	do > hobbies	يمارس هوايات
the drums	يعزف على الطبل	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
go > swimming	يذهب للسباحة	listen to > music	يستمتع إلى الموسيقى
watch > a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة القدم	You're welcome.	عفوًا.

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

a picture of	صورة لـ	clap (ped) for	يصفق لـ
belong to	ينتمي إلى/يخص	proud of	فخور بـ
at the hospital	في المستشفى	on TV/the radio	في التلفاز/على الراديو
for no money	بدون مال	What kind of ...?	ما نوع ...؟

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
show يبين/يوضح	showed	shown
hit يضرب	hit	hit
throw يرمى	threw	thrown
write يكتب	wrote	written
meet يقابل	met	met

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
finish	ينتهي	start/begin	يبدأ
true	صواب	false	خطأ

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

to - for - do - make

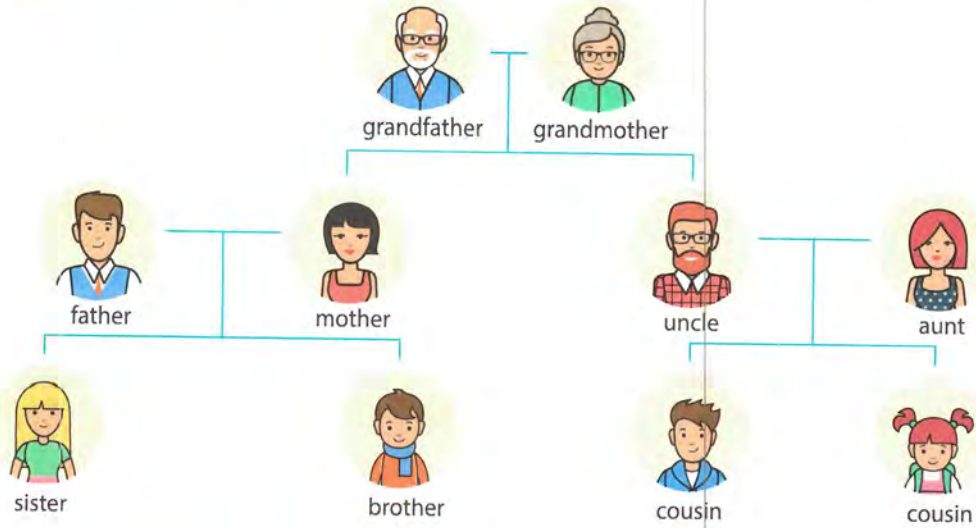
- 1 Don't ..... noise. Your father is sleeping.
- 2 That car belongs ..... my uncle.
- 3 What hobbies do you ..... in your free time?

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.



1

## Family members



## Relationship

**grandfather** is my father's/ mother's **father**.



**grandmother** is my father's/ mother's **mother**.



**brother** is my father's/ mother's **son**.



**sister** is my father's/ mother's **daughter**.



**uncle** is my father's/ mother's **brother**.



**aunt** is my father's/ mother's **sister**.



**cousin** is my uncle's/ aunt's **son/ daughter**.



2 is called يُسمى / يدعى

- My grandmother is called Huda.

3 Let's + inf. هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)

- Let's go to meet our grandparents.

4 , too أيضًا (تأتي في آخر الجملة المثبتة)

- My mum is a teacher. My dad is a teacher, too.

5 go + (v + ing) يذهب / love – like (noun/ v + ing) يحب

- I go swimming on Saturdays. • I like chess/playing chess.
- I love football/watching football matches.

6 on + (Saturday, Sunday, ...) تأتي مع أيام الأسبوع

- I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.
- Tarek goes swimming on Tuesdays and he plays football on Saturdays.

7 twins (n) توعم (اسم يمكن جمعها)

تشير إلى مجموعة من الإخوة أو الأخوات من نفس الأم وفي نفس العمر.

- Eyad and Adham are twins.

twin (adj)

توعم (صفة - لا تجمع)

- Sally is my twin sister.
- Hany and Hady are twin brothers.

Check Point Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My father is ..... Amr.  
a) calls b) call  
c) called d) cold
- 2 It's raining. Let's ..... an umbrella.  
a) take b) taking  
c) takes d) took
- 3 I usually go shopping ..... Sundays.  
a) in b) at  
c) on d) with

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

نفس العمر (3) الات (2) مجموعة (1)

## Definitions

Word	الكلمة	Definition
band	فرقة موسيقية	a <b>group</b> <sup>(1)</sup> of people who play music together
chess	شطرنج	a game for 2 people
drums	طبول	musical <b>instruments</b> <sup>(2)</sup> which you hit to make a noise
twins	توعم	brothers or sisters who are the <b>same age</b> <sup>(3)</sup>
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	work you do for no money

## التعريفات

هذا الجزء يساعد الطالب على فهم المفردات بشكل أفضل ويقوم بتهيئته للصف الثالث الإعدادي والمرحلة الثانوية.

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
finish	ينتهي	end	ينتهي
true	صواب	right	صواب
arrive	يصل	come	يأتي

## الكلمات ومرادفها

## Suffix

اللاحقة

اللاحقة: حرف أو مجموعة من الحروف توضع في نهاية الكلمة لتكون كلمة مختلفة وغالباً ما تغير نوع الكلمة.

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
play (v)	يلعب	-er		تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	لاعب	player (n)	لاعب
music (n)	موسيقى	-al		تحويل الاسم لصفة	موسيقى	musical (adj)	موسيقى

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
diary	مفكرة/يوميات	dairy	منتجات الألبان
band	فرقة موسيقية	bend	يثني / يطوي
uncle	عم/خال	ankle	كاحل القدم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهمجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.



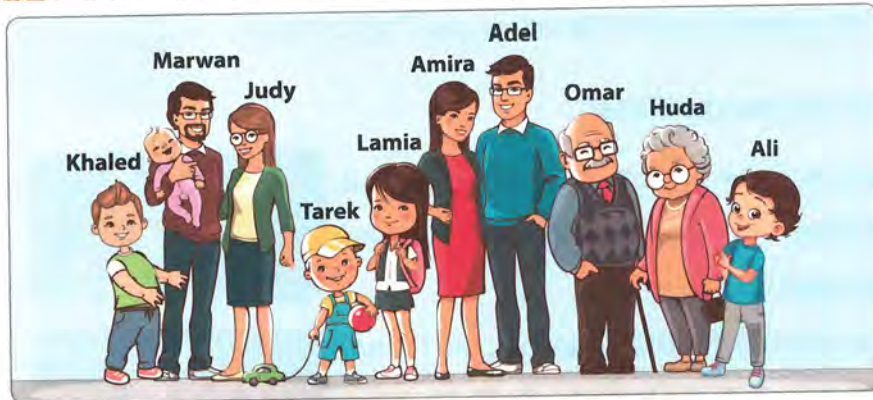
## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 1

#### Pre-reading question:

- How many members are there in your family?

 Read and write the names of the people 1–10.



SB page 3

(1) الوالدان

(2) ابنة

(3) أبناء

(4) خالة

(5) زوج الخالة

(6) ابن الخالة

Hello! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family. My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my **parents**<sup>(1)</sup> are teachers at my school. They have one **daughter**<sup>(2)</sup> – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two **sons**<sup>(3)</sup> – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my **aunt**<sup>(4)</sup>. My **uncle**<sup>(5)</sup> is called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my **cousin**<sup>(6)</sup>. It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

#### Post-reading question: Choose:

- The main idea of the text is .....

- a) Ali's family
- b) Ali's school
- c) Ali's day
- d) Ali's hobby

#### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

daughter /'dɔ:tə'/  
picture /'pɪktʃə'/

#### Listen and complete the text with possessive adjectives. WB page 72

**Lara** : Hi! **My** name's Lara and this is **my** family. That's **my** brother. **His** name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are **our** parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. **Her** parents are **my** uncle and aunt. **Their** names are Imad and Dina. What about you? What's **your** name?

**Pre-reading question:** - What's your favourite sport?

 **Read the interview and answer the question.** **SB page 4**

### An **interview**<sup>(1)</sup> with **twins**<sup>(2)</sup> brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both **aged**<sup>(3)</sup>  
12. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're twins!

**Interviewer: What are your hobbies?**

**Hazem** I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

**Hatem** And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

**Hazem** I love football!

**Hatem** I don't like football but I like music. I play the drums and I listen to **music**<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Hazem** He plays the drums in a **band**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Interviewer: Do you have any hobbies that you both like?**

**Hazem** We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

**Hatem** Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do **voluntary work**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Interviewer: What kind of voluntary work?**

**Hazem** We help in the children's hospital.

**Hatem** We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!



**Note:**

**Post-reading questions:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

voluntary /vɒləntəri/ Wednesday /wenz.deɪ/

1 Who always wins at chess?

2 **Choose:** The word "voluntary" means work you do .....

a) for a lot of money

b) for no money

c) for much money

d) to be rich

## Lesson 2

(1) مقابلة/ حوار

(2) توأم

(3) بالغ من العمر

(4) الموسيقى

(5) فرقة موسيقية

(6) عمل تطوعي



### Pre-listening question:

- What are your favourite hobbies?

### Listen and complete the diaries.

SB page 5

**Interviewer** Can I ask you some more questions?

**Hazem** Yes, of course.

**Interviewer** Hazem, when do you play basketball?

**Hazem** I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

**Interviewer** And when do you play football?

**Hazem** I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

**Interviewer** When do you go swimming?

**Hazem** I go swimming on Tuesdays.

**Interviewer** Wow, you are busy! Hatem, when do you play the drums?

**Hatem** I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

**Interviewer** What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

**Hatem** I listen to music. I like pop music.

**Interviewer** What do you do on Saturdays?

**Hatem** I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

**Interviewer** Thank you both.

**Hazem** You're welcome.



### Post-listening question:

- List the activities that Hazem does every week.

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father and mother are my .....  
a) grandchildren      b) cousins      c) parents      d) daughters  
الموضوع ٢٣ - ٢
2. This is my ..... . He's my mother's brother.  
a) son      b) father      c) ankle      d) uncle
3. Your mum or dad's mother is your .....  
a) grandmother      b) aunt      c) grandfather      d) grandparents  
المصا ٢٣ - ٢
4. Osama plays the violin in a famous .....  
a) band      b) bank      c) bend      d) pond  
المقوم ٢٣ - ٢
5. I like my ..... Abdullah because he's very kind and friendly.  
a) aunt      b) sister      c) daughter      d) cousin
6. Eman and Amany are ..... . They are sisters and aged 15.  
a) double      b) couple      c) twins      d) pairs  
الموضوع ٢٣ - ٢
7. I'm ..... . I don't have time to play.  
a) busy      b) free      c) ready      d) strong  
الشرقبة ٢٣ - ٢
8. We usually ..... swimming in the sea in summer.  
a) play      b) go      c) do      d) make
9. Your sister is your parent's .....  
a) daughter      b) cousin      c) mother      d) aunt  
الموضوع ٢٣ - ٢
10. My little brother is ..... five years.  
a) ages      b) age      c) aged      d) age's
11. My sister's ..... is in October. It's a special day.  
a) band      b) birthday      c) diary      d) chess
12. I always ..... chess with my dad every Friday.  
a) do      b) make      c) get      d) play
13. My father ..... to football matches on the radio.  
a) listens      b) plays      c) does      d) watches  
WB

# Time to Practise

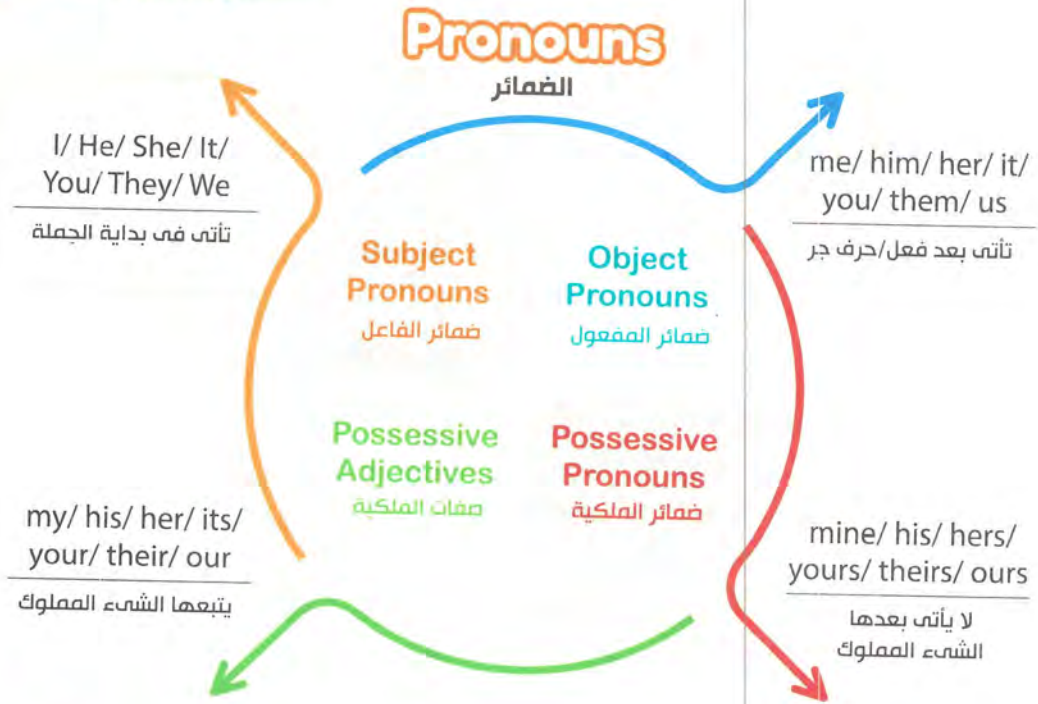


► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We never go to school ..... Fridays. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) in                                      b) at                                      c) for                                      d) on
2. Reading and chess are my favourite ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) hopes                                      b) foods                                      c) meals                                      d) hobbies
3. I ..... tennis matches on TV. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) wash                                      b) read                                      c) watch                                      d) write
4. Our parents are proud ..... us. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) at                                      b) of                                      c) on                                      d) to
5. I usually ..... to music on the radio. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) listen                                      b) hear                                      c) make                                      d) do
6. The teacher was angry because most boys ..... noise. الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) made                                      b) read                                      c) watched                                      d) wrote
7. A ..... is a group of people playing musical instruments together. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٠  
 a) parent                                      b) party                                      c) band                                      d) chorus
8. Your parents, brothers and sisters are called your family ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) friends                                      b) members                                      c) cousins                                      d) aunts
9. .... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Drums                                      b) Guitars                                      c) Flutes                                      d) Harps
10. My brother has a/an ..... to get a job. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) instrument                                      b) interview                                      c) match                                      d) visit
11. I write everything during the day in my ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) dairy                                      b) interview                                      c) band                                      d) diary
12. She works at hospital for no money. She does ..... work. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) easy                                      b) voluntary                                      c) worthless                                      d) bad
13. My favourite book is ..... "Treasure Island". الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) cold                                      b) called                                      c) pulled                                      d) scored

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

## C Language



### 1 Subject & Object Pronouns

ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول

#### Subject pronouns

ضمائر الفاعل (تأتي في بداية الجملة)

- I** - I have a shirt.
- You** - You have a book.
- He** - He has a jacket.
- She** - She has a dog.
- It** - It has a long neck.
- We** - We have a bird.
- You** - You have a house.
- They** - They have a car.

#### Object pronouns

ضمائر المفعول (تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر)

- me** - My father bought it **for me**.
- you** - This book belongs **to you**.
- him** - This jacket belongs **to him**.
- her** - I **saw her** playing with it.
- it** - I like **watching it**.
- us** - This bird **makes us** happy.
- you** - This house belongs **to you**.
- them** - This car belongs **to them**.

## Possessive adjectives

## صفات الملكية

صفات الملكية هي صفات تدل على الملكية، وتختلف عن ضمائر الملكية في أنها (يأتي بعدها الشيء المملوك)

- My** - This is **my** pen.  
**Your** - This is **your** book.  
**His** - This is **his** jacket.  
**Her** - This is **her** dress.  
**Its** - I have a car, **its** colour is red.  
**Our** - This is **our** house.  
**Your** - This is **your** car.  
**Their** - This is **their** bike.

## Possessive pronouns

## ضمائر الملكية

ضمائر الملكية هي ضمائر تدل على تملك الشيء وتأتي منفصلة (لا يأتي بعدها الشيء المملوك)

- mine** - This pen is **mine**.  
**yours** - This book is **yours**.  
**his** - This jacket is **his**.  
**hers** - This dress is **hers**.  
.....  
**ours** - This house is **ours**.  
**yours** - This car is **yours**.  
**theirs** - This bike is **theirs**.

## لاحظ



للسؤال عن مالك الشيء نستخدم (Whose) بمعنى ملك من/للمن.

## 1. Whose + الشيء المملوك + ...?

- **A: Whose** pen is this?  
- **B: It's my** pen.  
- **A: Whose** shoes are these?  
- **B: They are Hoda's** shoes. They are **hers**.

**B: It's mine.**

**B: They are Hoda's.**

## 2. belong to + مالك الشيء

- This dress **belongs to my** sister.  
- These shoes **belong to my** father.  
- It's my father's car. It **belongs to him**.

تخص/ تنتمي لـ

وتستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية

## Got it ?

## Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 This book is Mona's. It belongs to hers.  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (her) لأن بعد حرف الجر to نضع ضمير مفعول يعود على الاسم (Mona) وهي مفرد مؤنث. (.....)
- 2 That red bag doesn't belong to me. My is black.  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Mine) لأن ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم. (.....)
- 3 Huda and Omar love them parents.  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (their) لأن صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم (parents). (.....)

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس





### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Throw the ball to ....., please. I am waiting.
 

a) I	b) mine	c) my	d) me
------	---------	-------	-------

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet .....
 

a) he	b) his	c) him	d) her
-------	--------	--------	--------

WB
3. This is my aunt. .... name is Amal.
 

a) His	b) Her	c) Hers	d) My
--------	--------	---------	-------

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. Tell ..... about your family.
 

a) I	b) my	c) me	d) mine
------	-------	-------	---------

البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
5. That's ..... father's car.
 

a) I	b) me	c) my	d) mine
------	-------	-------	---------

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
6. Our parents are proud of ..... because we work hard at school.
 

a) her	b) us	c) our	d) she
--------	-------	--------	--------

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
7. Look at Basmala and Batoul! ..... are walking quickly.
 

a) They	b) Them	c) She	d) Her
---------	---------	--------	--------
8. The children took ..... books from the teacher.
 

a) they	b) their	c) theirs	d) mine
---------	----------	-----------	---------

البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
9. Ali is my friend. I'm writing a letter to .....
 

a) him	b) he	c) she	d) her
--------	-------	--------	--------

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This car belongs to me. It's my. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Ali is my best friend and her hobby is watching TV. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Amira and Noha love them parents. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
4. That's me pen and this is yours. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. Can you give me you ruler, please? (.....)
6. I have got a brother. He name is Mustafa. (.....) منيا ٢٠٢٣



# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father gave ..... his watch. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) I b) my c) mine d) me
2. The radio belongs to my mother. It's ..... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) her b) mine c) hers d) his
3. Clap for the football players. .... played very well. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Their b) Them c) They d) Theirs
4. We can ride ..... bikes. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) ours b) our c) we d) us
5. Your dress is new. .... is old. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) She b) You c) Mine d) Me
6. Hany and I are friends. .... live in Tanta. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) They b) We c) Us d) Our
7. Munir and Mustafa are twins. .... sister is called Radwa. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) Their b) They c) We d) Our
8. **A:** ..... pencil is this? **B:** It's Heba's. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) Whose b) When c) Where d) What
9. There are two dogs. .... are brown and white. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) It b) Its c) They d) Their

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That pencil case belongs to Ali. It's him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. It's her car. He often drives it. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
3. My son always does he homework at night. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. This red bag belongs to me. It's hers. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
5. She is my sister. I'm hers brother. المنيا ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

## D Skills



### Write it right

#### How to write about your family

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm (عدد السنوات) years old.
- My dad's name is (الاسم). He is a/an (الوظيفة).
- My mum's name is (الاسم). She is a/an (الوظيفة).
- I have (عدد) brothers and (عدد) sisters.
- My grandfather is called (الاسم).
- My grandmother is called (الاسم).
- I have (عدد) cousins. I love my family.

#### Example

#### My family tree

My name's Tarek. I'm twelve years old. I love sports. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My dad's name is Ali. He's a teacher of English. He is a good teacher. All the students like him. He's kind and friendly. My mum's name's Aya. She's a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She helps sick people. I have one brother and one sister. My brother is called Hossam. He's 9 years old. My sister is called Nahla. She's 7 years old. My grandfather is called Sabry and my grandmother is called Safia. I have two cousins, Bahaa and Omar. We live in a big city. I love my family very much.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"All about you"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### كيفية الكتابة عن أسرتك

#### Writing tips

Use capital letters for the beginning of a sentence, names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

- Where does your family live?
  - a) In Paris.
  - b) In Cairo.
  - c) In a village.
  - d) In Aswan.
- Where does your father work?
  - a) In France.
  - b) In a school.
  - c) In a hospital.
  - d) In an airport.
- What's your mother's job?
  - a) A doctor.
  - b) A nurse.
  - c) An engineer.
  - d) A teacher.
- How many brothers do you have?
  - a) One.
  - b) Two.
  - c) Three.
  - d) None.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I like playing the ..... in a band. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
  - a) chess
  - b) drums
  - c) football
  - d) science
- Famous people usually have a ..... life. They have no time to relax. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
  - a) poor
  - b) strange
  - c) busy
  - d) normal
- Your aunt is your mother's ..... كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
  - a) son
  - b) sister
  - c) cousin
  - d) daughter
- That necklace belongs ..... my sister.
  - a) on
  - b) with
  - c) to
  - d) at
- "False" is the opposite of .....
  - a) true
  - b) wrong
  - c) proud
  - d) busy
- Maher ..... voluntary work at a hospital. WB
  - a) goes
  - b) gives
  - c) plays
  - d) does
- We are all ..... to be Egyptians. الغاهرة ٢٠٢٢
  - a) pound
  - b) proud
  - c) pond
  - d) famous

8. Tarek and ..... cousin went to the park.

- a) his                      b) him                      c) her

d) he

المصوم ٢٠٢٢

9. .... dresses are these? They are Sara's.

- a) Who's                      b) Whose                      c) Who

d) What

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

10. My dog is bigger than .....

- a) yours                      b) your                      c) their

d) our

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. The dog had his breakfast.

(.....)

2. This isn't our ball. Theirs is black and white.

(.....)

3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is her birthday.

(.....) الشرفية ٢٠٢٢

4. Amgad takes her daughter to the funfair to play and have fun. (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

المصومة ٢٠٢٣

**"Your family"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 The twins are two children born at the ..... time.

- a) same                      b) different                      c) similar                      d) difficult

2 Everyone should ..... a hobby to do.

- a) play                      b) take                      c) do                      d) have

3 Here are the photos of Nader and me. .... are sitting under the tree.

- a) Them                      b) You                      c) We                      d) They



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

adventure (n)	مغامرة	mountain (n)	جبل
attic (n)	علية المنزل/السندرة	orphan (adj/n)	يتيم
goat (n)	عنزة	sheep (n)	خروف/أغنام

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

airport (n)	مطار	city (n)	مدينة
beach (n)	شاطئ	Egypt (n)	مصر
bread (n)	خبز	How long ...?	كم المدة ...?

### المفردات الإضافية

#### Check Point

Choose and complete:

lion - goat - mountain

- The ..... is my favourite farm animal.
- This ..... is very high.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

catch > a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	see > birds	يرى الطيور
come > home	يأتي إلى البيت	walk > in the mountains	يمشي في الجبال
make > a video call	يجري مكالمة فيديو	work > hard	يعمل بجد

### التعبيرات اللغوية

### Prepositions

away from	بعيداً عن	in bed	في السرير
at the top of	في قمة	live with	يعيش مع
by bus	بالتوبيس	on the phone	على الهاتف
communicate with	يتواصل مع	talk to	يتكلم إلى/مع
good at	جيد في	think of	يفكر في

### حروف الجر

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught	know	يعرف	knew	known
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk	take	ياخذ/ يستغرق	took	taken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt				

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
old	كبير السن	young	صغير السن
big	كبير الحجم	small	صغير الحجم
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **do - come - make - at**

- Sally is good ..... playing chess.
- We can ..... video calls using the tablet.
- When does your father ..... home from work?

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 take + (مدة زمنية) + to + inf.

- I **took** two hours **to do** my homework.

يستغرق (وقتاً)

2 help + inf. / to + inf.

- The internet can **help** you **communicate** with your friends.
- I **helped** my mother **to make** lunch yesterday.

يساعد

3 would ('d) like to + inf.

- I **would like to see** my grandparents every day.

يود أن/يريد أن

### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How long does it take ..... to school?
  - go
  - goes
  - to go
  - to going
- I'd like ..... when I get older.
  - travelling
  - to travel
  - travel
  - travels
- The questions were very difficult. The opposite of "difficult" is ".....".
  - hard
  - easy
  - cute
  - unimportant

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



## Definitions

## التعريفات

goats	ماعز	animals that are like <sup>(1)</sup> sheep
orphan	يتيم	a child with no mother or father
attic	علية المنزل/السندرة	a room <sup>(2)</sup> at the top of a house
city	مدينة	a place with lots of <sup>(3)</sup> houses and shops

(1) مثل

(2) حجرة

(3) كثير من

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
beautiful	جميل	cute	جميل
big	كبير الحجم	large	كبير الحجم

## Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	happy سعيد	unhappy غير سعيد
		important هام/ مهم	unimportant غير مهم

## Countries & Cities

## بلاد ومدن

Cairo	القاهرة	Morocco	المغرب/مراكش
Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون (جنوب إفريقيا)	Oman	عمان
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Paris	باريس
London	مدينة لندن (إنجلترا)	France	فرنسا
England	إنجلترا	Switzerland	سويسرا

## Similar spelling - Different meaning


Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
away	بعيد	a way	طريق/طريقة
sheep	خروف	ship	سفينة

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى



## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-listening question:** - Name two countries in Europe and in Africa.

 **Listen to Sami and Aya. Which three countries do you hear in the conversations?**

**Sami** My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, **France**<sup>(1)</sup>. He goes to the airport on Sundays and he catches a plane to Paris. It takes five hours to fly there. And then, he catches a plane home to **Egypt**<sup>(2)</sup> on Thursday evening. He works very hard.

On Saturdays, we play football in the park, and we play chess. I love my dad, and I'm happy when he's at home.

**Aya** My grandmother and grandfather live in **South Africa**<sup>(3)</sup>. They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours to fly there.

I talk to them on the phone, but they don't have a computer, so we can't make a video call. I would like to see them every day, but I can't.

### Lesson 3

SB page 7

(1) فرنسا (2) مصر (3) جنوب إفريقيا



### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

South /saʊθ/

Cape Town /'kɑ:p-taʊn/

**Post-listening question:** - Where do Aya's grandparents live?

 **Complete the text with these words.**

I am Hassan. My family **lives** in Alexandria, but my dad **doesn't work** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he **catches** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I **don't go** to school, and my father doesn't work. We **play** chess or we go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we **go** swimming. My brother **is** three and he **doesn't** swim. He **watches** us!

WB Page 74



**Pre-reading question:**

- What is your favourite story?

 **Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order.**

SB page 8

**Heidi**

by Johanna Spyri

Heidi is the story of an orphan<sup>(1)</sup> girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland.

Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains<sup>(2)</sup> and he has lots of goats<sup>(3)</sup>. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic<sup>(4)</sup> of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of adventures<sup>(5)</sup> in the city.

- |                 |             |          |
|-----------------|-------------|----------|
| (1) يتيم        | (2) جبال    | (3) ماعز |
| (4) عليه المنزل | (5) مغامرات |          |



**Note:**

orphan /ɔ:'fən/ Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/ attic /ætɪk/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

**Post-reading question:**

- Write a summary of the story.



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A room at the top of a house is called a/an .....  
 a) kitchen                      b) bathroom                      c) mountain                      d) attic  
القاعة ٢٠٢٣
2. .... are animals that are like sheep.  
 a) Monkeys                      b) Cows                      c) Goats                      d) Buffaloes  
الضأنه ٢٠٢٣
3. He has no parents. He is a/an .....  
 a) twin                      b) athlete                      c) orphan                      d) footballer  
دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. We can ..... a video call to our cousins in England.  
 a) come                      b) do                      c) make                      d) write
5. My cousin is very good ..... drawing.  
 a) in                      b) of                      c) at                      d) about  
بورسعيد ٢٠٢٤
6. He goes to the ..... on Mondays and he catches a plane to Paris. SB  
 a) airport                      b) station                      c) club                      d) school
7. I love my father, and I'm ..... when he's at home.  
 a) sad                      b) happy                      c) ugly                      d) bad
8. I always talk to my friends ..... the phone.  
 a) of                      b) in                      c) on                      d) at
9. I like my house because it's .....  
 a) beautiful                      b) bad                      c) orphan                      d) ugly
10. Heidi ..... in a bed in the attic of the house.  
 a) sleeps                      b) walks                      c) leaves                      d) goes  
المنيا ٢٠٢٣
11. Every day, Laila walks in the mountains to ..... birds and flowers.  
 a) fly                      b) see                      c) eat                      d) sleep
12. In the morning, I drink milk and eat ..... and cheese.  
 a) water                      b) tea                      c) bread                      d) juice
13. I usually go to school ..... school bus.  
 a) to                      b) with                      c) on                      d) by

# Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People like going to the ..... in the summer to swim in the sea.  
a) cave                      b) lake                      c) beach                      d) mountain
2. My dad works in London. He always ..... a plane to go there.  
a) comes                      b) catches                      c) sleeps                      d) arrives
3. I walk to school because my house isn't far away ..... it.  
a) at                      b) off                      c) to                      d) from
4. Heidi ..... in the mountains with the goats every day.  
a) walks                      b) flies                      c) watches                      d) takes
5. Many people use the internet to ..... with each other.  
a) stay                      b) live                      c) go                      d) communicate
6. Last week, I had a lot of ..... in Dream Park. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
a) adventures                      b) stories                      c) animals                      d) mountains
7. It ..... twelve hours to go to Aswan. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
a) makes                      b) takes                      c) gives                      d) talks
8. She is an orphan girl, so she goes to live ..... her grandfather.  
a) at                      b) about                      c) to                      d) with
9. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of .....  
a) airports                      b) planes                      c) goats                      d) tigers
10. We should work ..... to make our country great.  
a) hard                      b) easy                      c) busy                      d) free
11. When I ..... home, I have something to eat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
a) take                      b) give                      c) have                      d) come
12. Egypt is the most important ..... in Africa. الضوفية ٢٠٢٣  
a) village                      b) town                      c) city                      d) country
13. I like my grandmother, so I would like ..... her every day.  
a) to seeing                      b) seeing                      c) see                      d) to see

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

## C Language

### The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

#### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في التعبير عن:

1

#### Facts

حقائق

- The sun rises in the morning.
- The earth goes around the sun.

2

#### Habits and routines

العادات والروتين اليومي

- We usually play tennis on Friday.
- Ola listens to music every day.

I You We They (اسم جمع)

> **inf.**

I play football at the club.

**Form**  
التكوين

He She It (اسم مفرد)

> **inf. + s/es/ies**

She walks to school every day.

لاحظ



يتم إضافة (es) للفعل المنتهي بـ s/sh/ch/o/x

- 1 - Leila washes the dishes in the morning. - Hana goes to school on foot.

يتم إضافة (ies) للفعل المنتهي بحرف (y) ويسبقها حرف ساكن

- 2 - Salma studies hard. - The baby cries when he's hungry.

- لنفي الجملة نستخدم (don't/doesn't) بعد الفاعل ويتبعهما المصدر.

I You We They (اسم جمع)

> **don't + inf.**

I don't play football.

**Negative**  
النفي

He She It (اسم مفرد)

> **doesn't + inf.**

She doesn't walk to school.

#### Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 My brother watch TV every night.

تمكنتك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس. (.....)

- 2 Adel and Sami studies hard for their exams.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (watches) لأن الفاعل (My brother) مفرد، والفعل ينتهي بـ (ch). (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (study) لأن الفاعل (Adel and Sami) جمع. (.....)

## Yes/No questions

<b>Do</b>	I you we they (اسم جمع)	> inf. ...?	<b>Question</b> السؤال	<b>Does</b>	he she it (اسم مفرد)	> inf. ...?
-----------	-------------------------------------	-------------	---------------------------	-------------	-------------------------------	-------------

**A: Do you play** football?  
**B: Yes, I do./ B: No, I don't.**

**A: Does she walk to school** every day?  
**B: Yes, she does./ B: No, she doesn't.**

## Wh-questions

Q. word + **do/does** + subj. + **inf. ...?**

• Where **does** Tarek **live**?

• How **do** you **go** to school?

يمكن السؤال باستخدام (Verb to "be") مع الصفات

**Am/ Is/ Are** + حرف جر + الفاعل / اسم / صفة / ...?

1 **Are** you a teacher?

2 **Is** Ali **ready** for the match?

لاحظ

1

**Verb "to be"** يكون

am, is, are يتكون في المضارع من:

- I **am** (am not) a teacher.
- He **is** (isn't) happy.
- They **are** (aren't) at home.

2

**Verb "to have"** يملك

has, have يتكون في المضارع من:

- Mona **has** (doesn't have) a nice car.
- I **have** (don't have) money.
- We **have** (don't have) a big house.



**Got it ?**

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.



**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 Do she live in Cairo? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Does) لوجود (she).

2 My brother doesn't travels to Paris. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لأن (doesn't) يتبعها فعل في المصدر.

3 The boys don't happy because their father is abroad. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (aren't) لأن (verb "to be") يتبعه صفة/اسم.

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ▶ 1. I ..... to bed at ten every day.
 

a) goes	b) go	c) went	d) going
---------	-------	---------	----------
2. How long does it ..... you to come to school?
 

a) takes	b) taking	c) took	d) take
----------	-----------	---------	---------
3. Heidi doesn't ..... with her parents. She lives with her grandfather.
 

a) live	b) lives	c) lived	d) living
---------	----------	----------	-----------
4. Maha ..... like swimming.
 

a) not	b) don't	c) doesn't	d) isn't
--------	----------	------------	----------
5. .... your parents live in Giza?
 

a) Are	b) Do	c) Does	d) Have
--------	-------	---------	---------
6. .... you play chess?
 

a) Doing	b) Do	c) Did	d) Does
----------	-------	--------	---------
7. How does Sami ..... when his father is at home?
 

a) feel	b) feels	c) felt	d) feeling
---------	----------	---------	------------
8. What ..... you listen to on the radio?
 

a) does	b) are	c) were	d) do
---------	--------	---------	-------
9. This bird ..... beautiful colours.
 

a) have	b) has	c) having	d) to have
---------	--------	-----------	------------

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

WB

الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

أرهر/ضا ٢٠٢٢

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- ▶ 1. She is watching a nice programme every evening. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Does he gets up early? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. Ali don't play football after school. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. Does you walk to school? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
5. My father be in France for a holiday. (.....)
6. Where are you come from? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reham is good at tennis. She ..... it every day. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) plays                      b) play                      c) playing                      d) played
2. Mona ..... go to school on Friday. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢  
 a) don't                      b) isn't                      c) hasn't                      d) doesn't
3. We both ..... English books in the evenings. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) is reading                      b) are reading                      c) read                      d) reads
4. Fawzi and Hamdi ..... painting. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) love                      b) loves                      c) loving                      d) be loved
5. They ..... a lot of milk.  
 a) drinks                      b) don't drink                      c) aren't drink                      d) drinking
6. What sport ..... like? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) you don't                      b) don't you                      c) doesn't you                      d) you doesn't
7. I don't ..... to music. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) listens                      b) listen                      c) listening                      d) listened
8. .... Adel at home now? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) Is                      b) Does                      c) Do                      d) Has
9. Samy ..... go to school on Saturdays. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
 a) don't                      b) doesn't                      c) hasn't                      d) isn't

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I doesn't usually listen to pop music. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
2. Monkeys makes a lot of noise. (.....)
3. What subject does he studied? (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. What do her hobbies? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. I has my breakfast at school. (.....)
6. Are you speak English well? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





## 1. Speaking

### Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
			عند سؤال شخص عما إذا كان يمارس هواية أم لا تستخدم الصيغة التالية:
	Do you listen to music?	No, I don't.	هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى؟ لا.
	Where does your father work?	He works in a bank in Cairo.	أين يعمل والدك؟ يعمل في بنك بالقاهرة.
	How long does it take you to come to school?	It takes about 30 minutes.	ما طول المدة التي تستغرقها لكي تأتي إلى المدرسة؟ حوالي ٣٠ دقيقة.

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► Noha is asking Soha about her day.

Noha : Hello, Soha. How are you?

Soha : (1).....?

Noha : (2).....?

Soha : I get up at 6 a.m.

Noha : (3).....?

Soha : I go to school by bus.

Noha : What do you do on Fridays?

Soha : (4).....?

Noha : Do you enjoy your time?

Soha : (5).....?

السرفية ٢٢-٢٠





## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



### 1. How to write about a member of your family

- My (.....) 's) name is (الاسم).
- He's (العدد) years old.
- He lives in (المكان).
- He is (الوظيفة).
- His hobbies are (الهوايات).

#### Writing tips

A paragraph should have at least 10 sentences.

- يجب أن تحتوي الفقرة على عشر جمل على الأقل.

#### Example

##### My grandfather

My name is Omar. I'm twelve years old. I have a big family. My grandfather's name is Kamal. He's 65 years old. He lives on a farm in Benha. He's a farmer. He grows apples. His favourite food is fish and rice. His hobbies are reading and fishing. I love him so much because he is friendly and kind. He always helps me and the other members of the family. We usually visit him at the weekend. He tells us interesting stories. He helps us grow different plants on his farm. I'm really proud of him.

### 2. How to write about your hobby

كيفية الكتابة عن هوايتك

- I like playing (اللعبة/الرياضة).
- I play (اللعبة/الرياضة) every week.
- I play it with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- I play it at the (المكان).
- It's my favourite.

#### Example

##### The hobby I like

It's really important to do a hobby when you are free. There are many hobbies to do in life. Everyone has a different hobby. Some people like sports and others like reading, but I like playing chess. It's a game for all ages. This game is for two people. I like to play it on Fridays. I play it with my friends at home. I can play it online with people all over the world. My grandfather taught me how to play chess. Sometimes, I play it on the computer. I like it very much. It's my favourite.



### 1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Amgad. I live with my family in Giza. I have one sister. She is a student at preparatory school. She goes to school at 8:00 a.m. and returns home at 3:00 p.m. My father is an accountant. He works for a big company. He gets up very early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. My mother is a teacher. She teaches geography. I get up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I stay at home with my grandmother. I would like to be six to go to school and meet my friends.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage about? .....
2. Where does Amgad's father work? .....
3. Why do you think Amgad doesn't get up early? .....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The family lives in .....  
 a) the countryside    b) a city    c) a village    d) the desert
5. The underlined word "She" refers to Amgad's .....  
 a) teacher    b) sister    c) grandmother    d) mother
6. Amgad wants to be six to go to .....  
 a) school    b) home    c) a company    d) a farm

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is a room at the top of the house.  
 a) kitchen    b) break    c) attic    d) garage  
بور سفيد ٢٠٢٢
2. A/An ..... is a child with no father or mother.  
 a) twin    b) orphan    c) driver    d) happy  
الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
3. When the weather is hot, we go to the .....  
 a) beach    b) desert    c) moon    d) sun  
القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
4. Mona is not making a video ....., but she is talking to her friend.  
 a) cell    b) call    c) photo    d) line  
القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. My uncle travelled to a lot of countries like England and .....  
 a) Rome    b) France    c) London    d) Paris
6. It's an adventure to ..... a mountain.  
 a) climb    b) do    c) go    d) walk

7. I play ..... my friends in the club.

- a) in                                      b) of                                      c) at                                      d) with

8. Soha ..... go swimming on windy days.

- a) don't                                      b) isn't                                      c) aren't                                      d) doesn't

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

9. Does Hala ..... playing tennis?

- a) like                                      b) likes                                      c) liked                                      d) to like

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

10. She ..... shopping every week.

- a) goes                                      b) go                                      c) going                                      d) gone

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does you listen to music every day?

(.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

2. Does Sama has a blue dress?

(.....)

3. He doesn't plays tennis.

(.....)

4. I am not very good in drawing.

(.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

### 4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your father"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Do you ready for the concert?

(.....)

2 What sport are you good?

(.....)

3 Adel has a car, so he goes to work by bus.

(.....)

4 **A:** Is Salma happy? **B:** No, she isn't sad.

(.....)



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	gymnastics (n)	ألعاب الجمباز
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
balance (d) (v)	يوازن	the country (n)	الريف
best friend	أفضل صديق	top (n/adj)	أفضل/أول
gymnast (n)	لاعب/لاعبة جمباز	train (for) (ed) (v)	يتدرب (لمدة)

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

busy life	حياة مشغولة/مزدحمة	physics (n)	الفيزياء
description (n)	وصف	swimming pool (n)	حوض السباحة
nearby (adj/adv)	مجاور	work (ed) (v) hard	يعمل بجد

### المفردات الإضافية

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **best – gymnastics – physics**

- I like ..... It's my favourite subject.
- Adel is my ..... friend. He's a lot of fun.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

achieve > dreams	يحقق أحلاماً	have > food/a drink	يتناول طعاماً/شرباً
find > difficult	يجد صعوبة	stay > strong	يبقى قوياً

### التعبيرات اللغوية

### Prepositions

a photo of	صورة لـ	move to	ينتقل إلى
------------	---------	---------	-----------

### حروف الجر

### Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف

### الكلمات وعكسها

Choose and complete: **weak – strong – of**

- 1 That's a photo ..... my best friend.
- 2 The lion is a ..... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا  
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 so that + فاعل + can/could + inf.

- Habiba **eats** healthy food **so that** she **can** stay strong.
- I **went** to England **so that** I **could** learn English.

لكى

2 physics/ mathematics/ gymnastics/ athletics

بعض الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ (ics) هي أسماء مفردة

- **Gymnastics** is a difficult sport.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة  
والفهم وليس للحفظ.

### Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
healthy	صحي	well	بصحة جيدة
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	-ics	تحويل اسم الفاعل	athletics (n) ألعاب القوى
gymnast (n)	لاعبة جمباز		لاسم	gymnastics (n) ألعاب الجمباز

### Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى	healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي

### Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
weak	ضعيف	week	أسبوع
dreams	أحلام	drums	طبول

هذا الجزء يوضح لك  
الفرق بين الكلمات  
المتشابهة في الهجاء  
ولكن مختلفة في  
المعنى

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-reading question:

- How can we keep fit?

### Lesson 6

 Read about Habiba Marzouk. Which sport makes her happy? **SB page 10**

### Habiba Marzouk achieves<sup>(1)</sup> her dreams<sup>(2)</sup>

Habiba Marzouk is a **gymnast**<sup>(3)</sup>. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she **trains**<sup>(4)</sup> for five or six hours. She is a **top**<sup>(5)</sup> gymnast in Africa and she wants to go to the **Olympics**<sup>(6)</sup>.



- (1) يحقق/ ينجز
- (2) أحلام
- (3) لاعبة جمباز
- (4) يتدرب
- (5) أفضل/ أول
- (6) الألعاب الأولمبية
- (7) ألعاب الجمباز

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong. **Gymnastics**<sup>(7)</sup> is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.

### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

gymnast /dʒɪmnæst/ gymnastics /dʒɪmnæstɪks/ Olympics /ə'ɒlɪmpɪks/

### Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Habiba is happy?

### Read and punctuate.

My name is **Omar**. **Nabila** is my sister. She lives with me and my family in **Damietta**. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go *swimming on Saturday and Sunday*. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is **Nabila**? She is 12. **That** is the same as me. I am 12, too.

### WB Page 77



### Pre-reading question:

- What's your best friend's name?

## Lesson 7

 Read and complete the text about Ali's sister Lamia.

SB page 11



My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I **live** in Aswan with my family. My parents **are** teachers. My brother Ali **is** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I **listen** to music with **my** brothers. Ali **plays** football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled **goes** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We **play** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. **Our** team is very good!

### Post-reading question:

- Do you think that Lamia lives a healthy life? Why/Why not?

 Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

WB Page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. **Their** sister is called Radwa. **Her** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with **my** brother and **his** name is Sayed. **Our** house is in Cairo. What is **your** best friend's name?

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Habiba Marzouk is a famous .....  
a) gymnastic      b) gymnastics      c) gym      d) gymnast  
المصنوعة ٢٠٢٣
- A baby bird is very ..... It can't fly for many days.  
a) poor      b) weak      c) week      d) strong  
المصنوعة ٢٠٢٢
- Fresh food is good for you and it is .....  
a) unhealthy      b) bad      c) healthy      d) deadly  
الخبرة ٢٠٢٣
- Habiba Marzouk wants to ..... her dreams and go to the Olympics.  
a) give      b) play      c) check      d) achieve  
مصناب ٢٠٢٣
- Habiba eats well because ..... is a difficult sport.  
a) gym      b) gymnastics      c) gymnast      d) gymnasium  
مصناب ٢٠٢٢
- Ahmed has a very ..... life. He goes to school and studies hard all the time.  
a) ugly      b) free      c) busy      d) dirty  
القبولية ٢٠٢٢
- Athletes work hard to ..... their studies and their sport.  
a) bring      b) spell      c) destroy      d) balance  
المنوشة ٢٠٢٢
- As a gymnast, she ..... for 5 or 6 hours daily.  
a) trains      b) teaches      c) studies      d) swims  
القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
- Eating healthy food helps us to ..... strong.  
a) find      b) stay      c) achieve      d) move
- We usually have ..... when we sleep.  
a) habits      b) hobbies      c) drums      d) dreams
- I like to live in the ..... because it's quiet.  
a) country      b) city      c) town      d) attic
- She is a top gymnast and she wants to go to the .....  
a) physics      b) athletics      c) Olympics      d) gymnastics
- My father always ..... a drink after dinner.  
a) eats      b) has      c) trains      d) moves





## Speaking

### Talking about your best friend

#### التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
What's his/her name?		ما اسمه/ اسمها؟	
	My best friend's name is (.....).	اسم صديقى/ صديقتى المفضلة هو (.....).	
How old is he/she?		كم عمره/ عمرها؟	
	He's/She's (العدد) years old.	عمره/ عمرها ..... عامًا.	
Where does he/she live?		أين يعيش/ تعيش؟	
	He/She lives in (المكان).	يعيش/ تعيش فى .....	
What are his/her hobbies?		ما هواياته/ هواياتها؟	
	His/Her hobbies are (الهوايات).	هواياته/ هواياتها هى .....	

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

السرفية ٢٢ - ٢٠

#### ► Ahmed is asking Omar about his best friend.

**Ahmed** : What is your best friend's name?

**Omar** : (1).....

**Ahmed** : Fares! (2).....?

**Omar** : He's 14 years old.

**Ahmed** : What does he like?

**Omar** : (3).....

**Ahmed** : Sports! (4).....?

**Omar** : His favourite sport is football.

**Ahmed** : Is he friendly and kind?

**Omar** : (5).....



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ali asks Hani about his best friend.**

**Ali** : Who is your best friend, Hani?

**Hani** : (1).....

**Ali** : (2).....?

**Hani** : He is 13. He is in the same classroom.

**Ali** : What are his hobbies?

**Hani** : (3).....

**Ali** : (4).....?

**Hani** : His favourite sport is basketball.

**Ali** : Is he tall?

**Hani** : (5).....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Good students work hard to ..... their dreams in life. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
  - forget
  - watch
  - fail
  - achieve
- I eat healthy food to stay ..... القنوص ٢٠٢٢
  - weak
  - strong
  - unhealthy
  - poor
- It's ..... to eat fruit and vegetables. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
  - warm
  - dirty
  - unhealthy
  - healthy
- Athletes work hard to ..... their studies, work and families. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
  - practise
  - train
  - balance
  - achieve
- My sister likes sports. She's a famous ..... الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
  - gymnast
  - charger
  - orphan
  - jungle
- The athlete is ..... hard to be in the next Olympics. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
  - using
  - raining
  - travelling
  - training
- She has a very busy ..... She goes to school and studies hard.
  - live
  - life
  - alive
  - leaf

- القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
8. What ..... he like doing when he is at home?  
 a) do                      b) does                      c) is                      d) are
9. My grandparents ..... in the city. They live in the country.  
 a) doesn't live                      b) don't live                      c) lives                      d) live
10. London ..... in England.  
 a) is                      b) am                      c) are                      d) be

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Where do your grandfather live? (.....)
2. Can you help my with the homework? (.....)
3. Do you busy today? (.....)
4. Ghada like healthy food. (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

**"Your best friend and why you like him/ her"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- 1 Famous people always ..... a very busy life.  
 a) move                      b) find                      c) stay                      d) have
- 2 Some girls ..... it difficult to play football.  
 a) do                      b) have                      c) find                      d) make
- 3 We usually visit our grandparents ..... Sunday evenings.  
 a) in                      b) on                      c) at                      d) for

## Vocabulary

achieve (d)	يحقق/ ينجح
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
adventure	مغامرة
interview	مقابلة/ حوار
aged	بالغ من العمر
mountain	جبل
athlete	لاعب رياضتي قوى
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
attic	علية المنزل/ السندرة
orphan	يتيم
balance (d)	يوازن
band	فرقة موسيقية
twin	توأم
gymnast	لاعب/ لاعبة جمباز
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
daughter	ابنة
great-grandparents	أجداد الأجداد
great-grandchildren	أبناء الأحفاد
uncle	عم/ خال - زوج العمّة/ الخالة
parents	الوالدان
grandchildren	أحفاد

## Language

### Subject pronouns الضمائر الفاعل

I/ We/ You/ He/ She/ It/ They

- They go to school by bus.

### Object pronouns الضمائر المفعول

me/ us/ you/ him/ her/ it/ them

- I go to school with them.

### Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية

my/ our/ your/ his/ her/ its/ their

- Their bus moves at 7:30.

### Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية

mine/ ours/ yours/ his/ hers/ theirs

- This school is theirs.

### The present simple tense:

#### Affirmative:

- They **play** football.
- He **plays** football.

#### Negative:

- They **don't play** football.
- He **doesn't play** football.

#### Questions:

- **Do they play** football?
- **Does he play** football?

## Skills

### Ask and answer questions about hobbies

السؤال والإجابة عن الهوايات

**A:** Do you listen to music?

**B:** No, I don't.

**A:** Where does your father work?

**B:** He works in a bank in Cairo.

**A:** How long does it take you to come to school?

**B:** It takes about 30 minutes.

### Talking about your best friend

التحدث عن صديقك المفضل

- What's his/her name?
- My best friend's name is .....
- How old is he/she?
- He's/She's ..... years old.
- Where does he/she live?
- He/She lives in .....
- What are his/her hobbies?
- His/Her hobbies are .....



## A Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

الاسئلة ٢٢-٢٠

- Heidi lives with her grandfather because she is ..... .
  - ill
  - tall
  - an orphan
  - pretty
- Heidi's grandfather lives in a ..... .
  - big house
  - small house
  - flat
  - villa
- Heidi sleeps in/on the ..... .
  - attic
  - bathroom
  - ground
  - living room
- Heidi drinks ..... .
  - coffee
  - tea
  - juice
  - milk

## B Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ali and Sami are talking about hobbies.**

**Ali** : Can I ask you some questions?

**Sami** : (1)..... .

**Ali** : Do you have any hobbies?

**Sami** : (2)..... . I like sports.

**Ali** : (3)..... ?

**Sami** : My favourite sport is football.

**Ali** : (4)..... ?

**Sami** : I play football on Fridays and Saturdays. What about you?

**Ali** : (5)..... .

**Sami** : Great! Let's play together.

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Salim. I'm thirteen years old. My best friend is called Salah. He and I study together. His home is only a ten-minute walk from my place. He is funny and friendly. We are always happy to be with each other. He is always kind and helpful to me. When I don't go to school because I'm ill, he comes to my house to ask about me. When he doesn't come to school, I ask about him. We also play football together on Fridays. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.  
.....
2. Why do you think Salim likes Salah?  
.....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to?  
.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Salim and Salah are .....  
a) sisters                      b) brothers                      c) students                      d) teachers
5. The underlined word "friendly" means .....  
a) strong                      b) well                      c) kind                      d) healthy
6. Salah's house is ..... Salim's house.  
a) near                      b) far                      c) opposite                      d) behind

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These brothers are the same age. They are .....  
a) cousins                      b) sisters                      c) twins                      d) parents  
المترجمة ٢٠٢٢
2. Your dad's brother is your .....  
a) uncle                      b) aunt                      c) sister                      d) brother  
المترجمة ٢٠٢٢
3. People do ..... work without getting money.  
a) voluntary                      b) business                      c) group                      d) job  
الحريرة ٢٠٢٢

4. Every day, Heidi walks in the ..... with the goats.  
 a) airports                      b) mountains                      c) schools                      d) pools
5. She is a/an ..... girl. She lost her father.  
 a) busy                      b) orphan                      c) ugly                      d) happy
6. Murad works hard to ..... his dreams. القبوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) achieve                      b) archive                      c) receive                      d) believe
7. I ..... a lot to play the guitar well.  
 a) take                      b) sleep                      c) achieve                      d) train
8. **A:** Which house is yours? **B:** ..... is next door. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Yours                      b) My                      c) Ours                      d) Their
9. Basel doesn't ..... the piano. He plays the flute. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) play                      b) plays                      c) played                      d) playing
10. Amira ..... with her family in Damietta.  
 a) to live                      b) living                      c) lives                      d) live

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Adel can't find him book. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢  
 2. The girl like her teacher so much. الحيه ٢٠٢٣  
 3. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
 4. What sport do you good at? (.....)

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Your favourite hobby"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

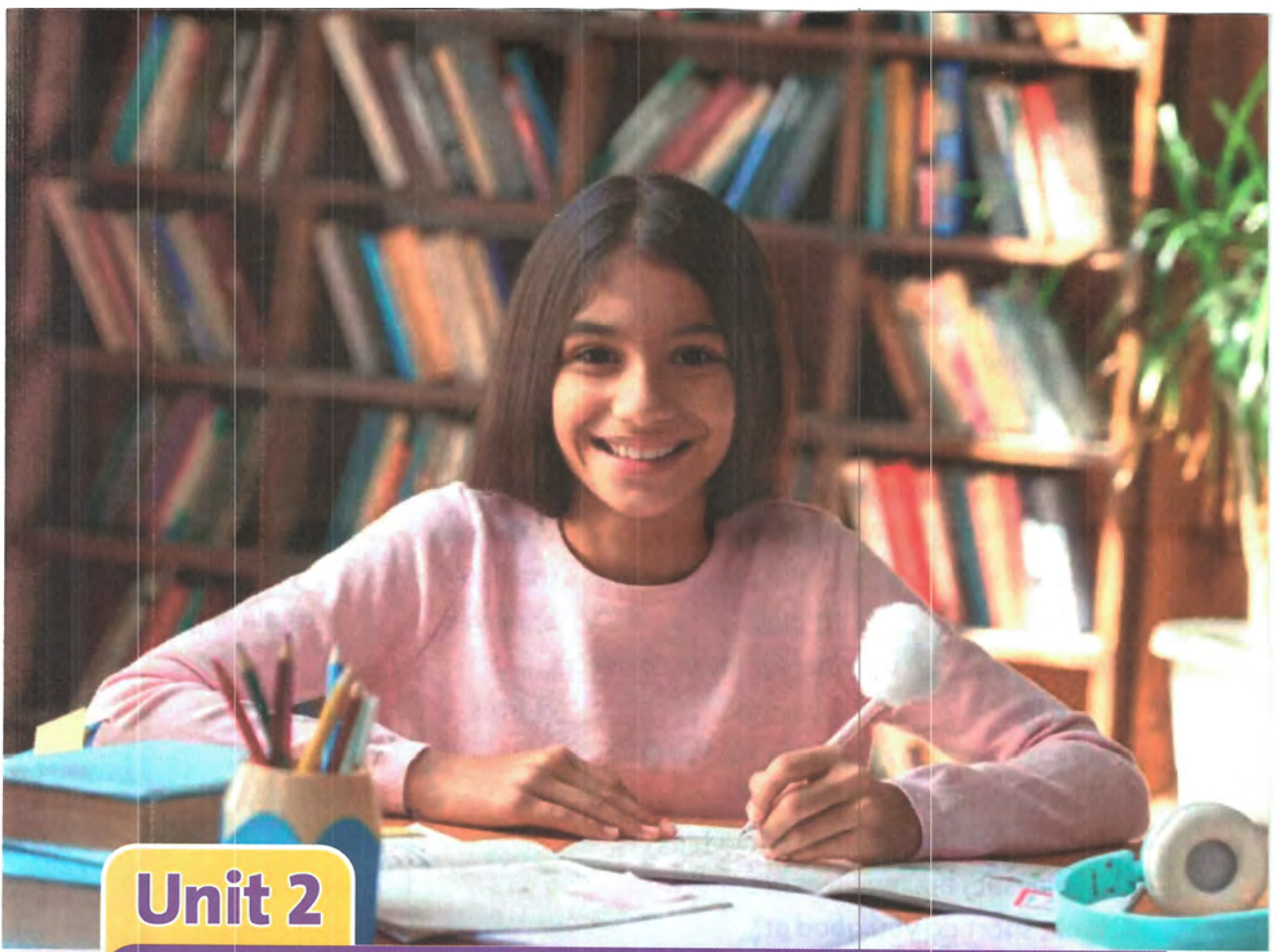
Practise more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



## Unit 2

# It's my favourite subject

### *Objectives of the unit*

- Reading** Descriptions of schools around the world
- Writing** A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life
- Listening** A discussion about timetables
- Speaking** Asking and answering about school and timetables
- Language** Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'
- Life Skills** Critical thinking; self-management

Tapescripts



WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب





## A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

### Key Vocabulary

bell (n)	جرس	library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة)
daily life	الحياة اليومية	playground (n)	ملعب
far away	بعيداً	timetable (n)	جدول الحصص
hall (n)	صالة/قاعة	typical (adj)	معتاد/نموذجي/مثالي
head teacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
<b>School subjects المواد الدراسية</b>			
Arabic (n)	اللغة العربية	maths (n)	الرياضيات
art (n)	التربية الفنية/الرسم	music (n)	التربية الموسيقية
computer studies (n)	دراسات الحاسب	religion (n)	الدين
drama (n)	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)	science (n)	العلوم
English (n)	اللغة الإنجليزية	social studies (n)	الدراسات الاجتماعية
home economics (n)	الاقتصاد المنزلي		

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

different (adj)	مختلف	road (n)	طريق
half past	ونصف	student (n)	طالب
quarter past	وربع	study (y'ied) (v)	يدرس/يذاكر
quarter to	إلاربعة	trip (n)	رحلة

### المفردات الإضافية

#### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

sport – subject – library

- 1 We read books in the school .....
- 2 My favourite ..... is science.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition  
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

It's my favourite subject 53

## Language Expressions

## التعبيرات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	have > a lesson	لديه حصة
get > home	يصل إلى البيت	have > breakfast	يتناول الإفطار
live > in Nairobi	يعيش في مدينة نيروبي	take > a long time	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

at break	في الفسحة	It's time for ...	حان الوقت لـ ...
get to	يصل إلى	ways of	طرق لـ

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

do – at – for – have

- 1 I play with my friends ..... break.
- 2 I ..... my homework in the evening.
- 3 I ..... my breakfast with my friends at school.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
choose يختار	chose	chosen	mean يعنى	meant	meant
get up ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	ring يرن/يدق	rang	rung
hear يسمع	heard	heard	have لديه/عنده	had	had

## Words and Opposites

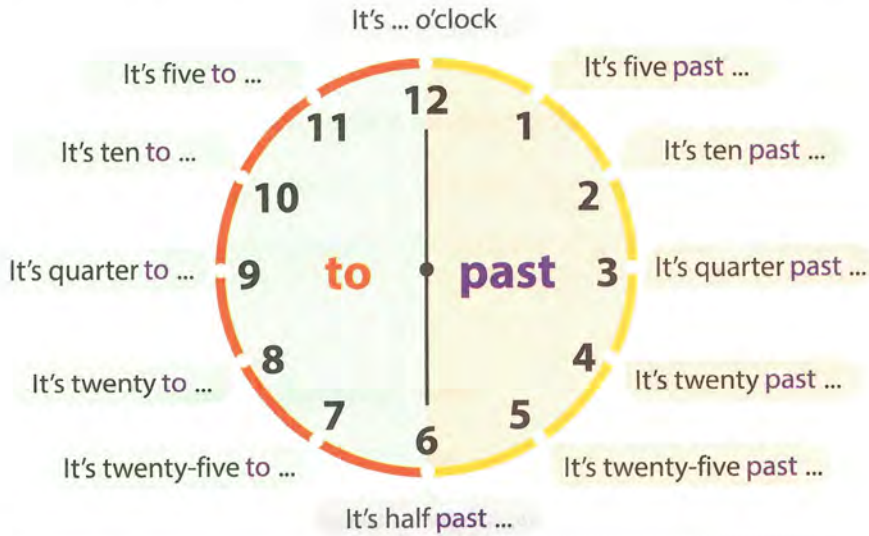
## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	the same	نفس الشيء
far away	بعيداً	near	قريب
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى
typical	معتاد/نموذجي/مثالي	unusual	غير معتاد



## 1 Ways to tell/say the time:

طرق الإخبار عن الوقت:



## 2 computer studies – home economics – social studies – physics

- المواد الدراسية تعامل معاملة المفرد.

- Social studies **is** my favourite subject.
- Home economics **starts** at ten thirty on Sunday.

## 3 drive + شخص

يوصل شخصاً بالسيارة

- My father always **drives** me to school.

## 4 first أولاً / then ثم / second الثاني / next التالي/بعد ذلك

نستخدم الكلمات السابقة عند سرد أحداث أو رواية قصة

- First, I visited my grandmother.
- Then, I met my friends in the club.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Physics ..... my favourite subject.  
a) am                      b) is                      c) are                      d) does
- 2 My mum has a meeting at ..... past nine next Sunday.  
a) half                      b) have                      c) halve                      d) quieter
- 3 To get the opposite of "usual", we add the prefix ".....".  
a) im-                      b) a-                      c) in-                      d) un-

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## Definitions

bell	جرس	it rings when <sup>(1)</sup> a lesson starts and finishes
hall	قاعة/صالة	it is a big room for a lot of students <sup>(2)</sup> and teachers
library	مكتبة (للقراءة)	you can find a lot of <sup>(3)</sup> books here
playground	ملعب	it is in a school. You play games here

## التعريفات

(1) عندما

(2) الطلاب

(3) كثير من

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ
typical	نموذجي/مثالي/معتاد	usual	معتاد

## الكلمات ومرادفها

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	الكلمة الجديدة
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent	تحول الفعل لصفة	different (adj)	مختلف
teach (v)	يُدرّس/يُعلّم	-er	تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل	teacher (n)	مدرس

### Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطي عكس المعنى	usual (adj)	معتاد	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
bell	جرس	bill	فاتورة
hall	قاعة/صالة	hill	تل
past	و	paste	معجون

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهماء ولكن مختلفه في المعنى



## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 1

#### Pre-listening question:

- What do you like most about your school?

#### Listen and complete the timetable.

**Amal** I like the new timetable<sup>(1)</sup>. What's your favourite day, Injy?

**Injy** I like Thursday. We have Social Studies<sup>(2)</sup> first on Thursday. Then we have English<sup>(3)</sup> and then we go to Science<sup>(4)</sup>. That's my favourite subject.

**Amal** My favourite day's today. We have Maths<sup>(5)</sup> first and second lesson after break today. I love Maths! Then we have Science and Art<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Injy** I like Art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow?

**Amal** English, then Religion<sup>(7)</sup> is next, then Arabic<sup>(8)</sup> and then Home Economics<sup>(9)</sup>. After break, we have Social Studies. Then we have Science and Computer Studies<sup>(10)</sup>. Finally, we have Music<sup>(11)</sup>.

**Injy** When do we have Drama<sup>(12)</sup>?

**Amal** That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now! See you later!

#### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:  
social /səʊʃəl/    economics /i:kənə'mɪks/    religion /rɪ'lɪdʒən/

#### SB page 13

- (1) جدول الحصص
- (2) الدراسات الاجتماعية
- (3) اللغة الإنجليزية
- (4) العلوم
- (5) الرياضيات
- (6) الرسم
- (7) الدين
- (8) اللغة العربية
- (9) الاقتصاد المنزلي
- (10) دراسات الكمبيوتر
- (11) الموسيقى
- (12) الدراما

#### Post-listening questions:

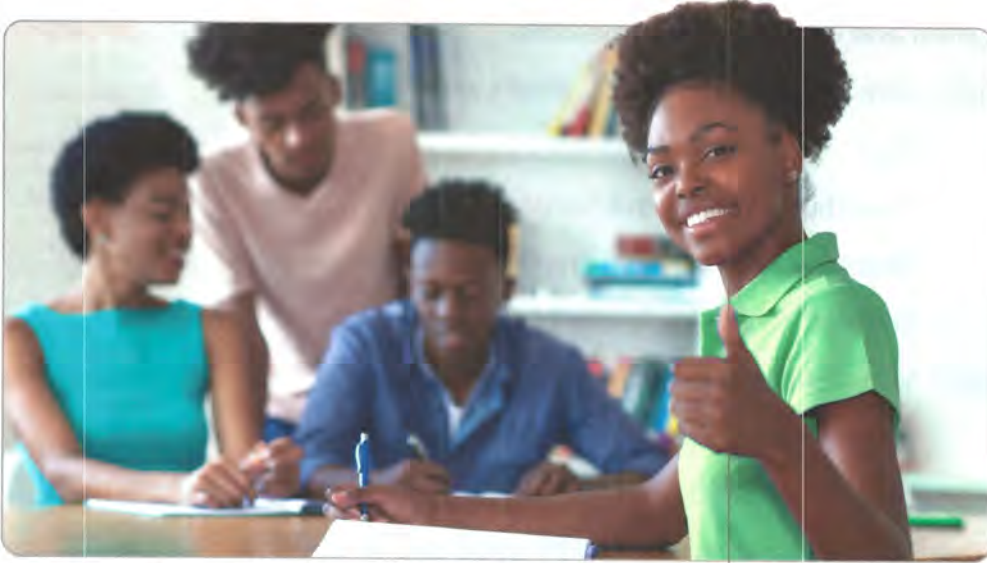
- 1 What's Injy's favourite subject?
- 2 Do you think Injy and Amal like Drama? Why?

**Pre-reading question:** - How long does it take to go to school?

 **Read the text again and answer the questions.**

SB page 14

## Daily life around the world



"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical <sup>(1)</sup> day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away <sup>(2)</sup>, so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell <sup>(3)</sup> at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall <sup>(4)</sup>. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground <sup>(5)</sup>, but sometimes we go to the library <sup>(6)</sup> to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day!"

نموذجي/مثالي (1)

بعيداً جداً (2)

جرس (3)

صالة/قاعة (4)

ملعب (فناء المدرسة) (5)

مكتبة (للقراءة) (6)

 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Nairobi /naɪ'rɔʊbi/      typical /tɪpɪkəl/

**Post-reading question:**

- How do you think Akeyo feels when she returns home?



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is the subject of how to learn numbers. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) Art                      b) Maths                      c) Arabic                      d) Music
2. My son is good at ..... . He can draw pictures. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) English                      b) Arabic                      c) Maths                      d) Art
3. We use a mouse in ..... lessons. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢  
 a) Arabic                      b) art                      c) maths                      d) computer studies
4. We learn about countries in ..... lessons. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢  
 a) social studies                      b) religion                      c) maths                      d) computer studies
5. The opposite of "the same" is ".....". القليوبية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) similar                      b) different                      c) equal                      d) alike
6. For homework, we often read books from the ..... WB  
 a) laboratory                      b) library                      c) playground                      d) hall
7. I usually get up at half ..... six.  
 a) past                      b) post                      c) paste                      d) to
8. I ..... Arabic and English on Sunday.  
 a) go                      b) make                      c) have                      d) stay
9. I go to school library at ..... الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) break                      b) brake                      c) park                      d) bark
10. On a ..... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) hard                      b) musical                      c) bad                      d) typical
11. We learn about food in home ..... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) studies                      b) economics                      c) gymnastics                      d) physics
12. We have eight ..... on a school day.  
 a) lessons                      b) numbers                      c) languages                      d) bells
13. All the children in our school go to the ..... when the head teacher wants to talk to us. WB  
 a) bell                      b) hall                      c) library                      d) playground

# Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Social studies and science are school .....  
a) objects                      b) subjects                      c) teams                      d) groups  
الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
2. At break, I play games with my friend in the .....  
a) hall                      b) classroom                      c) playground                      d) office  
بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
3. You can look at the ..... to know how many lessons you'll have today.  
a) desk                      b) chair                      c) timetable                      d) bag
4. What's your ..... subject?  
a) favourite                      b) favour                      c) fat                      d) heavy  
القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. I'm not very good ..... English.  
a) in                      b) at                      c) on                      d) of
6. .... is an interesting subject.  
a) English                      b) Gym                      c) Volleyball                      d) Handball
7. I usually ..... my homework before I sleep.  
a) say                      b) give                      c) make                      d) do
8. It's half ..... seven. It's time for school.  
a) past                      b) pass                      c) to                      d) too  
الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
9. She's great at ..... She likes art.  
a) watching                      b) playing                      c) swimming                      d) drawing  
القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
10. We study people and how they live in the ..... lessons.  
a) science                      b) social studies                      c) maths                      d) drama  
الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
11. I usually ..... lunch at home with my family.  
a) do                      b) get                      c) have                      d) make
12. We have English first on Monday. .... we have Arabic.  
a) Last                      b) Past                      c) Then                      d) After
13. A ..... is a big room for a lot of students and teachers.  
a) hill                      b) hall                      c) bell                      d) hole

حلل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 



## C Language

### Adverbs of frequency

### ظروف التكرار

always دائماً



100%



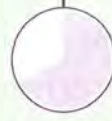
usually عادة



70 - 80%



often غالباً



60 - 70%



sometimes أحياناً



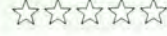
50%



never أبداً



0%



**Usage & Form:** التكوين والاستخدام:

They're used to say how often we do things, or how often things happen.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، وتستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط.  
نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي كالتالي:

Subject + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + inf./verb + s, es, ies

- Ex:**
- We **usually** play football on Mondays.
  - Amr **sometimes** goes to school by bus.
  - I **always** walk to school.
  - Sally **never** gets up late.

### لاحظ

١- يمكن استخدام **sometimes** أول الجملة أي قبل الفاعل.

- Sometimes, we go to the library to read books.

٢- مع (verb to be) يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) كالتالي:

Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظرف التكرار) + adj. (صفة)

- They are **usually** late.
- Mona is **always** clever.

٣- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم أداة الاستفهام (كم مرة How often) كالتالي:

**How often**

+

do > (you - we - they - اسم جمع)

does > (he - she - it - اسم مفرد)

+ inf. + ...?

- **A:** How often do **Akeyo and her brother** walk to school? **B:** They never walk to school.

### Got it ?

تمكنت هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

### Read and correct the underlined words:

- Students go never to school on Fridays.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (never go) لأن ظرف التكرار يسبق الفعل الرئيسي للجملة.



## 1. Speaking

### Asking and answering about school and timetables

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجدول الحصص

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
	What's your favourite subject?	ما هي مادتك المفضلة؟	
	I like maths./My favourite subject is social studies.	أحب الرياضيات/مادتي المفضلة هي الدراسات الاجتماعية.	
	How many lessons do you have every day?	كم عدد الحصص التي لديك يومياً؟	
	I have seven lessons every day.	لدى سبع حصص يومياً.	
	Are you good at maths?	هل أنت جيد في الرياضيات؟	
	Yes, I am.	نعم.	
	What time is the break?	متى تكون الفسحة؟	
	It's at eleven o'clock.	في الحادية عشرة تماماً.	

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

القبليوية ٢٠٢٢

► **Judy is asking Jana about her favourite subject.**

**Judy** : How are you, Jana?

**Jana** : (1).....

**Judy** : What's your favourite subject?

**Jana** : (2).....

**Judy** : Are you good at science?

**Jana** : (3).....

**Judy** : (4).....?

**Jana** : Science lesson starts after break on Sunday.

**Judy** : (5).....?

**Jana** : It finishes at twelve o'clock.



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة  
فقرة بشكل جيد.



### How to write about your day/daily life

كيف تكتب عن يومك/حياتك اليومية

- My name's (الاسم).
- I go to a preparatory school in (المكان).
- I usually get up at (الساعة).
- I often (فعل) in the morning.
- I always (فعل) after school.
- I usually (فعل) with my friends.
- We sometimes go out in the evening.
- I never (فعل) on school days.

### Writing tips

A paragraph has:

- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:

- جملة رئيسية.
- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

### Example

#### My daily life

My name's Bassem. I always have a busy day. I go to a preparatory school in Giza. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my hands and face. Then I have my breakfast. I often walk to school in the morning. I go with my friends. I have seven lessons a day. I can do many activities during the break. When I finish school, I come back home at 2:30 p.m. I always do my homework after school. I usually meet my friends. We sometimes go out in the evening. I never sleep late on school days.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your day"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your mother's job?  
 a) A nurse.                      b) A doctor.                      c) A teacher.                      d) A cook.
2. How often do you go shopping?  
 a) Often.    b) Always.  
 c) Sometimes.    d) Never.
3. How often does your dad work at the weekend?  
 a) Never.                      b) Always.                      c) Often.                      d) Sometimes.
4. What does your dad work with?  
 a) Mobiles.                      b) Televisions.                      c) Tablets.                      d) Computers.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The bell ..... when a lesson starts and finishes.  
 a) gets                      b) means                      c) hears                      d) rings
2. It's half ..... seven. It's time for school.  
 a) past                      b) pass                      c) to                      d) too
3. Mostafa loves ..... art at school.  
 a) eating                      b) playing                      c) doing                      d) buying
4. .... school days, I get up at half past six.  
 a) On                      b) At                      c) In                      d) Of
5. I usually ..... breakfast with my family.  
 a) drink                      b) do                      c) have                      d) tell
6. My dad always ..... us to school.  
 a) has                      b) chooses                      c) arrives                      d) drives
7. The road is always busy, so it ..... a long time to get there.  
 a) has                      b) takes                      c) does                      d) makes
8. Amira ..... her homework after dinner.  
 a) does never                      b) never is                      c) is never                      d) never does

الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

المنيا ٢٠٢٣

9. **A:** ..... do you go out for lunch? **B:** I sometimes go out for lunch.

- a) How many      b) How tall      c) How often      d) How long

10. I ..... get up late on holidays.

- a) am sometimes      b) ever      c) every      d) usually

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. They often went to the theatre in summer. (.....)

2. Does you usually get up early? (.....)

3. My aunt does always the shopping on Friday. (.....)

4. They play in the club every day. They never go to the club. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Your school day"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 We have maths ..... break.

- a) in      b) during      c) at      d) after

2 Hala ..... her make-up in the morning.

- a) never does      b) is never      c) never is      d) does never

3 ....., Toka comes to school late.

- a) Never      b) Always      c) Sometimes      d) When



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

notebook (n)	كراسة/دفتر	rules (n)	قواعد
pencil case (n)	مقلمة	uniform (n)	زي موحد
<b>Means/Forms of transport وسائل النقل</b>			
boat (n)	قارب	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
canoe (n)	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو	snowmobile (n)	عربة الثلج
helicopter (n)	هليكوبتر (طائرة عمودية)	train (n)	قطار

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

camel (n)	جمل	road (n)	طريق
cap (n)	قبعة/كاب	shoes (n)	حذاء
football shirt (n)	قميص كرة قدم	snow (n)	جليد/ثلج
fun (n)	مرح/متعة	village (n)	قرية
office (n)	حجرة المكتب	winter (n)	الشتاء

### المفردات الإضافية

#### Check Point

Choose and complete: **boat - summer - camel - winter**

- The ..... is a desert animal.
- We cross the river using a .....
- It's very cold in .....

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

## Language Expressions

## التعبيرات اللغوية

do > homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	say > unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة
follow > school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	take > a journey	يقوم برحلة سفر

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

cycle to	يركب الدراجة إلى	on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من
in a canoe	في الزورق	on the right	على اليمين
on a snowmobile	في عربة الثلج	on time	في الوقت المحدد

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

on – do – say – to

- I cycle ..... school every day.
- We never ..... unkind things to our classmates.
- Hany should go to school ..... time.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cheap	رخيص الثمن	expensive	غالي الثمن
dangerous	خطير	safe	أمن
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
kind	طيب	unkind	غير طيب
outside	خارج	inside	داخل
wear	يرتدى	take off	يخلع ملابسه

**Pre-reading question:**

- Is your journey to school difficult or easy?

 **Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 1.**

**SB page 18**

## How do they go to school?

In some countries, children live a long way from their school.

They do not go to school by car<sup>(1)</sup>, bus<sup>(2)</sup> or train<sup>(3)</sup>.

1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle<sup>(4)</sup> to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.



2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe<sup>(5)</sup>. The canoe takes the children to school and back home again every day.



3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile<sup>(6)</sup>!



 **Note:**

Uganda /ju:'gændə/  
canoe /kənu:/

village /vɪlɪdʒ/  
snowmobile/snoʊməbi:l/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

cycle /saɪkəl/


**Post-reading question:**

- Mention three ways children use to go to school.



**Pre-listening question:**

- How do you go to school?

 **Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.**

SB page 18

**Narrator 2 : 1**

**Narrator** Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel.

(1) زورف

عربة ثلج (2)

**Boy** When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick!

**Narrator 2 : 2**

**Narrator** These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a **canoe**<sup>(1)</sup>. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

**Boy** Sometimes, when it rains a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.

**Narrator 2 : 3**

**Narrator** This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a **snowmobile**<sup>(2)</sup>!

**Boy** It's cold, but it's fast—and fun!

**Post-listening questions:**

- 1 If you were a student in the USA, how would you find travelling to school on a snowmobile?
- 2 When the roads are busy, which is faster, a bus or a bike?

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Practise more



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:


1. People travel on a ..... when there is snow. الغربية ٢٠٢٢  
a) foot                      b) bike                      c) canoe                      d) snowmobile
2. Camels are very ..... They can carry 200 kilos of bags. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
a) weak                      b) low                      c) strong                      d) poor
3. My aunt is very ..... She always gives me big presents. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
a) sad                      b) kind                      c) unkind                      d) poor
4. Some children in Egypt ..... to school. Bikes are fantastic. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
a) cycle                      b) play                      c) meet                      d) drive
5. The canoe ..... children to school and home again every day. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
a) drives                      b) rides                      c) takes                      d) cycles
6. Cars, buses, planes and trains are means of ..... القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
a) report                      b) airport                      c) port                      d) transport
7. We should ..... our school uniform during the school day.  
a) forget                      b) wear                      c) help                      d) say
8. Students should ..... their homework every day.  
a) do                      b) follow                      c) put                      d) say
9. Some students go to school ..... a canoe. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
a) by                      b) on                      c) in                      d) at
10. The children in the USA ..... to school on a snowmobile. WB  
a) cycle                      b) take                      c) ride                      d) travel
11. My mother gave me a red ..... to put my pens in.  
a) ruler                      b) pencil case                      c) notebook                      d) timetable
12. We always ..... school rules. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
a) finish                      b) fill                      c) fail                      d) follow
13. He doesn't want to help his friends. He is .....  
a) clever                      b) busy                      c) unkind                      d) kind

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Riding bikes is a/an ..... way to travel.  
a) kind                      b) unkind                      c) unhealthy                      d) healthy
- We arrived ..... Luxor two days ago.  
a) in                      b) at                      c) on                      d) with
- They are polite. They never ..... unkind things to their friends. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
a) say                      b) talk                      c) laugh                      d) listen
- The opposite of "expensive" is ".....".  
a) unhealthy                      b) busy                      c) cheap                      d) unkind
- He lives in a small ..... away from the city.  
a) village                      b) country                      c) lake                      d) snow
- A ..... takes people from one side of a lake to another. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
a) bike                      b) canoe                      c) snowmobile                      d) car
- My school is ..... the other side of the lake.  
a) from                      b) in                      c) at                      d) on
- A canoe is a kind of a ..... that goes on water. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
a) taxi                      b) snowmobile                      c) boat                      d) tram
- I ..... on my school uniform at 7 a.m. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
a) have                      b) talk                      c) take                      d) put
- When the roads are ....., the bus is slow.  
a) strong                      b) expensive                      c) busy                      d) cheap
- They usually ..... to school. They go on foot.  
a) walk                      b) cycle                      c) drive                      d) fly
- The opposite of the word "safe" is ".....". القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
a) false                      b) different                      c) dangerous                      d) expensive
- School ..... should be followed. الغربية ٢٠٢٢  
a) roles                      b) rulers                      c) rolls                      d) rules

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

## C Language

### Possessive 's / s'

### الملكية ('s / s')

تستخدم ('s) / (s) للتعبير عن ملكية شخص/أشخاص لشيء ما:

نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم المفرد غير المنتهي بـ (s)

- It's Adel's book.
- That's my friend's car.

's

نستخدم ('s) الملكية بعد الاسم الجمع الذي ليس آخره حرف (s) (جمع غير منتظم).

- That is not the children's room.

نستخدم (') مع الاسم الجمع المنتظم المنتهي بحرف (s)

- That's the teachers' room.
- This is a girls' school.

s'

يمكن استخدام (') مع الاسم المفرد المنتهي بحرف (s).

- It's Lamees' dress.

### لاحظ



١- لا تستخدم ('s) مع الجماد.

- I repaired my car door.

٢- عند امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشيء ما، نضع ('s) على الاسم الأخير فقط:

- I know whose ruler this is. It has **Dalia and Azza's** names on it.

٣- عند إضافة ('s) لبعض الوظائف تتحول إلى أماكن:

محل الجزارة/butcher's/الصيدلية/chemist's/المخبز/baker's

٤- عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (ملك من/ لمن Whose) كالتالي:

Whose + (object الشيء) + is/are ...?

**A:** Whose shoes are these?

**B:** They are Ali's shoes.

### Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 My father repaired the laptop's battery.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (laptop battery) لأنه جماد فلا يتم إضافة ('s).

- 2 Who's book is that?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Whose) لأنها تسأل عن الملكية.

- 3 This is Ayas' car.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Aya's) لأن Aya اسم مفرد غير منتمٍ بـ s.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is ..... phone. It's new. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) Ali                      b) Alis                      c) Ali's                      d) Alis'
2. Mr. Samy is in the ..... room. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) teachers'                      b) teacher's                      c) teachers                      d) teacher
3. This is ..... bag. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Ahmeds                      b) Ahmed's                      c) Ahmeds'                      d) Ahmed
4. Those are my ..... books.  
 a) children                      b) childrens'                      c) children's                      d) children'
5. Her father is called Wael and her ..... name is Samar.  
 a) mother                      b) mothers                      c) mother's                      d) mothers'
6. **A:** ..... dresses are these? **B:** They are Sara's. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Who's                      b) Whose                      c) Who                      d) What
7. This car belongs to Ghada. It's ..... car.  
 a) Ghada's                      b) Ghadas'                      c) Ghadas                      d) Ghada'
8. All students have their books. All the ..... books are on the table.  
 a) student's                      b) students'                      c) students                      d) student
9. .... English class starts at ten o'clock.  
 a) Thursday                      b) Thursday's                      c) Thursdays                      d) Thursdays'
10. Ali broke the ..... leg yesterday.  
 a) table                      b) table's                      c) tables'                      d) tables

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. These are my sister shoes. She likes them. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. My friend name is Rawda. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
3. My sister goes to a girl's school. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. The childrens' clothes are in that bag. (.....) دسوات ٢٠٢٣
5. These are the boys football shirts. They want them. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
6. Nada's and Yara school is very big. (.....)

# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is ..... drum. He likes music.
  - a) Hani'
  - b) Hanis
  - c) Hani's
  - d) Hanis'
2. Hala has got red hair. .... hair is very long.
  - a) Halas
  - b) Hala's
  - c) Halas'
  - d) Hala
3. My father went to the mechanic to fix the ..... door.
  - a) cars'
  - b) car's
  - c) car is
  - d) car
4. I had to wait in the ..... room till my father finished his work in the hospital.
  - a) doctor
  - b) doctor's
  - c) doctors'
  - d) doctors

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
5. That is not my ball. It is the ..... ball.
  - a) childrens'
  - b) childrens's
  - c) children
  - d) children's

القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
6. We buy bread at the .....
  - a) baker's
  - b) bakers
  - c) bakers's
  - d) baker
7. .... family is from Tanta.
  - a) Sara
  - b) Sara's
  - c) Saras'
  - d) Saras

الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
8. **A:** ..... cap is it? **B:** It's mine.
  - a) What
  - b) Whose
  - c) When
  - d) Who's
9. My mum and dad sleep here. This is my ..... room.
  - a) parents'
  - b) parent's
  - c) parents
  - d) parent
10. Chess is my ..... favourite game. It's his hobby.
  - a) cousin's
  - b) cousins
  - c) cousin
  - d) cousins'

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We found Mona bag. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. The girl's names are Hanen and Marwa. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. **A:** Can you see Kamal's and Amir classroom?  
**B:** It is on the right. (.....) WB
4. My uncles favourite sport is basketball. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠
5. My cousin's house is over there. I love them. (.....)
6. We can buy meat at the butcher. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### 1. How to write about your journey to school

كيفية الكتابة عن رحلتك إلى المدرسة

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I go to school with (الشخص/الأشخاص).
- My school is (near/ far from) my house.
- I travel to school by (الوسيلة).

#### Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

- قبل البدء في الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

#### Example

##### My school journey

My name's Marwa. In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train. I live in Luxor. I go to school with my friends. I'm in preparatory one at school. My school is far from my house, so we never walk to school. We travel to school by ferry. It takes about an hour to arrive at school. The ferry is very nice. We cross the river to get there. It's not an easy journey. The ferry takes us to school and home again every day. I get home at three o'clock. I like my journey to school.

#### 2. How to write about your weekend

كيفية الكتابة عن عطلة الأسبوعية

- At the weekend, I go to (المكان).
- I go with (الأشخاص).
- We go there by (وسيلة المواصلات).
- We go back home (الوقت).
- We always have a good time.

#### Example

##### My weekend

My name's Tamer. I live in Cairo with my family. At the weekend, I go to my grandfather's farm. It's in Giza. I go there with my family. We usually go in my father's car. I like the farm. I help my grandfather plant apples. My brother likes farm animals. He watches them and gives them water. My sister helps my grandmother make lunch. My parents go for a walk to enjoy the green trees there. We always have a good time. It's a lot of fun.



**1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives **near** his school, so he goes there on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. His favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favourite sport is football.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. How often does Nabil go to the school library? .....
3. What kind of books do you think Nabil likes to read? .....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Nabil likes meeting ..... people.  
 a) bad                      b) clever                      c) unkind                      d) unhappy
5. The underlined pronoun "His" refers to .....  
 a) food                      b) Nabil's father                      c) Nabil                      d) sport
6. The opposite of the word "**near**" is .....  
 a) far                      b) close                      c) nearby                      d) crowded

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My school ..... is a white shirt and blue pants.  
 a) rule                      b) uniform                      c) form                      d) picture  
كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
2. The train left Cairo at 7 o'clock and soon we ..... in Giza.  
 a) walked                      b) arrived                      c) got                      d) went
3. At school, we have many ..... to follow.  
 a) subjects                      b) sports                      c) rules                      d) rooms
4. We usually cycle ..... school.  
 a) to                      b) at                      c) in                      d) on  
القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
5. There is a nice park ..... the other side of the road.  
 a) in                      b) with                      c) on                      d) to
6. It's ..... to travel on a snowmobile. I like it very much.  
 a) fun                      b) busy                      c) unkind                      d) unhealthy



7. I like to ..... to school, it's healthier and costs no money.

- a) swim                      b) drive                      c) cycle                      d) fly

8. Room "1" is the ..... office. His name is Mr Ibrahim.

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

- a) teachers                      b) teachers'                      c) teacher                      d) teacher's

9. .... brother is a good tennis player.

- a) Waleed                      b) Waleed'                      c) Waleed's                      d) Waleeds

10. We buy medicine at the .....

- a) chemist's                      b) chemists'                      c) chemists                      d) chemist

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: Who bag is this? B: It's Hadeer's.

(.....)

2. Yesterday match was boring.

(.....)

3. This is Sandy laptop.

(.....)

4. This is a shop for mens clothes.

(.....)

### 4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"How children go to school and why"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### Challenging Questions

Read and correct the underlined words:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 What is today date, Mazin?

(.....)

2 The chemist is the place where I buy medicine.

(.....)

3 My grandparents' farm is big. He bought it 10 years ago.

(.....)

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



## Definitions

Word	الكلمة	التعريفات
an email	رسالة بريد إلكتروني	it is a simple <sup>(1)</sup> message sent through <sup>(2)</sup> the internet
Arabic	اللغة العربية	it is the language of Arab countries <sup>(3)</sup>
art	الرسم	we paint and draw in this lesson
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب	we use a mouse in this lesson
English	اللغة الإنجليزية	it is the language <sup>(4)</sup> of England
French	اللغة الفرنسية	it is the language of France
maths	الرياضيات	we learn about numbers in this lesson

(1) بسيط

(2) عبر/خلال

(3) الدول العربية

(4) لغة

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
friendly	ودود	kind	طيب
true	صحيح	correct/right	صحيح

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	الوظيفة Function	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
friend (n)	صديق	-ly	تحول الاسم لصفة	friendly (adj) ودود

## Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	الوظيفة Function	الكلمة Word	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	friendly (adj) ودود	unfriendly (adj) غير ودود

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
quite	إلى حد ما	quiet	هادئ
Arabic	اللغة العربية	Arab	عربي (الجنسية)

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى



## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 5

#### Pre-listening question:

- What is your favourite subject?

#### Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 19

**Leila** There's the bell!

**Aya** What subject have we got next?

**Leila** Let's look at the timetable. We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray!

**Aya** Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies!

**Leila** I love it! It's my favourite! What's your favourite subject, Aya?

**Aya** I like science and languages<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Leila** Are you good at languages?

**Aya** I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Leila** Who's our English teacher this year?

**Aya** It's Mrs. Amal.

**Leila** Oh good. She's really friendly. When have we got English?

**Aya** It's after break.

**Leila** What time is break?

**Aya** It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground, and go to the library.

**Leila** OK!



(1) اللغات

(2) اللغة الفرنسية

#### Post-listening questions:

- 1 How do you think Aya can improve her English?
- 2 How is Mrs. Amal?

**Pre-reading question:**

- What do you do after school?

 **Read about Amira. Write the questions a–c in the correct places.**

SB page 20

## A Day in My Life!

**Amira is from Egypt.**

**Q : 1. How old are you, and where are you from?**

**A :** I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada.

**Q : 2. What subjects do you like?**

**A :** This year, I'm in preparatory 1 at school. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths.

We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too, but I'm not very good at it!

**Q : 3. What do you usually do after school?**

**A :** I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework before I have dinner. After dinner, I usually have a shower and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up and go to bed?

**Post-reading question:**

- How often does Amira have computer studies?

 **Read the email and write the missing sentences a–c in the right places.**

WB page 84

**Hi Nagwa,**

How are you? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. **My father works with computers.** My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. **My brother always plays football when we go there!** He is very good at football. What about you? **What do you do at the weekend?**

**Best wishes**

**Nesma**



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What is your ..... subject? **B:** It's English. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) true                      b) friend                      c) favourite                      d) correct
2. .... is the main language of Arab people. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢  
 a) French                      b) Spanish                      c) English                      d) Arabic
3. I like my teachers. They're very .....  
 a) bad                      b) unkind                      c) friendly                      d) sad
4. I usually ..... a shower after school.  
 a) go                      b) do                      c) have                      d) make
5. My mother ..... up early to make our breakfast. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) puts                      b) comes                      c) forgets                      d) wakes
6. Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) weeks                      b) views                      c) activities                      d) souvenirs
7. I go to school. I'm in ..... one.  
 a) false                      b) preparatory                      c) right                      d) kind
8. A/An ..... is a simple message sent through the internet.  
 a) email                      b) art                      c) letter                      d) computer
9. Arabic, English and French are all .....  
 a) meals                      b) languages                      c) hobbies                      d) timetables الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
10. My mother always ..... shopping on Sundays.  
 a) arrives                      b) gets                      c) makes                      d) goes
11. Breakfast, lunch and ..... are daily meals. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) dinner                      b) language                      c) petrol                      d) reading
12. My teacher asked us to ..... a project about computers.  
 a) do                      b) make                      c) have                      d) come
13. When I ..... home from school, I have something to eat.  
 a) take                      b) give                      c) have                      d) come



## Speaking

### Ask and answer questions about school

السؤال والإجابة عن الدراسة  
جملة الرد

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
← online			
How do you travel to school?		كيف تسافر إلى المدرسة؟	
	I travel to school by bus.	أسافر إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.	
How long does it take?		كم تستغرق الرحلة؟	
	About ten minutes.	حوالي ١٠ دقائق.	
Who is our teacher of English this year?		من هو مدرسنا في اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟	
	Mr Waleed Ali.	الأستاذ وليد علي.	
When have we got English?		متى موعد حصة اللغة الإنجليزية؟	
	It's after break.	إنها بعد الفسحة.	
What time is break?		متى تكون الفسحة؟	
	It's at quarter past ten.	في العاشرة والرابع.	

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

الفيوم ٢٠٢٣

► Ahmed is asking Mustafa about his favourite subject.

**Ahmed** : Hi, Mustafa. Can I ask you a few questions about your school?

**Mustafa**: (1).....

**Ahmed** : What is your favourite subject?

**Mustafa**: (2).....

**Ahmed** : (3).....?

**Mustafa**: Because English is an interesting subject.

**Ahmed** : (4).....?

**Mustafa**: Mr. Omar is my English teacher this year.

**Ahmed** : How often do you study it?

**Mustafa**: (5).....

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

Salma is asking Amany about school.

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

Salma : Do you mind if I ask you some questions about school?

Amany : (1).....

Salma : When do you usually wake up on school days?

Amany : (2).....

Salma : (3)..... ?

Amany : I walk to school because it's very close to my house.

Salma : (4)..... ?

Amany : My favourite school subject is English.

Salma : Is there a library in your school?

Amany : (5)..... I go there daily.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **A:** What ..... are you good at, Rana? **B:** English and Italian.

- a) hobbies                      b) sports                      c) foods                      d) languages

2. We always ..... dinner at nine in the evening.

- a) have                      b) do                      c) take                      d) give

3. My best friend lives ..... Giza.

- a) on                      b) in                      c) from                      d) of

4. We paint and draw in ..... lessons.

- a) Arabic                      b) science                      c) maths                      d) art

5. I like my friend Waleed because he is .....

- a) ugly                      b) bad                      c) friendly                      d) unfriendly

6. I get up at seven, then I ..... my clothes.

- a) look at                      b) put on                      c) wake up                      d) go to

7. Before I go to bed, I take my favourite book and ..... in bed.

- a) read                      b) come                      c) go                      d) have

8. My father asks me not to close the ..... door hard.

- a) cars'                      b) car's                      c) car is                      d) car

9. My father always ..... to work by bus.

- a) is going                      b) going                      c) goes                      d) go

10. A: ..... dress is this? B: It's mine.

- a) Which                      b) Whose                      c) When                      d) What

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. A: How many do you study English? B: Every day.

(.....)

2. What languages are you good for?

(.....)

3. My brother's birthday is on Monday. They are twins.

(.....)

4. Aya never walk to school.

(.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**"A typical day in your life"**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 My brother always plays football ..... we go to the park.

- a) when                      b) why                      c) which                      d) what

2 I don't like science, but I'm ..... good at it.

- a) quite                      b) not                      c) never                      d) hardly

3 Students ..... many activities to do at school.

- a) stay                      b) make                      c) do                      d) have



## Vocabulary

maths	الرياضيات
motorbike	دراجة بخارية
break	فسحة/راحة
notebook	كراسة/دفتر
canoe	زورق طويل خفيف/الكنو
computer studies	دراسات الحاسب
daily life	الحياة اليومية
playground	ملعب
drama	الدراما (أدب المسرحيات)
religion	الدين
English	اللغة الإنجليزية
rules	قواعد
favourite subject	مادة مفضلة
French	اللغة الفرنسية
snowmobile	عربة الثلج
social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية
timetable	جدول الحصص
home economics	الاقتصاد المنزلي
typical	نموذجي/مثالي
languages	لغات
uniform	زي موحد
Whose ...?	لمن/ملك من ...؟

## Language

- 1 Adverbs of frequency:** ظروف التكرار: always / غالباً / عادة / usually / دائماً / sometimes / أحياناً / never / أبداً /  
نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما، ونستخدم مع زمن المضارع البسيط.  
نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي كالتالي:  
• Subject + **adv.** + inf./verb + s, es, ies  
يتم استخدام ظروف التكرار بعد (am/is/are) مع (verb to be)  
• Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظروف التكرار)  
• Subject + am/is/are + **adv.** (ظروف التكرار) كالتالي:  
**2 (s) / (s')**  
• It's **Adel's** book.  
• That is not the **children's** notebook.  
**3 (s) / (s')**  
• That's **the teachers'** room.  
• It's **Lamees'** dress.  
لا تستخدم (s) مع الجماد  
• I repaired my car door.  
عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم (Whose) ملك من/لمن  
**A: Whose shoes are these?**  
**B: They are Ali's shoes.**

## Skills

- Asking and answering about school and timetables:  
السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة وجدول الحصص:  
**A: What's your favourite subject?**  
ما هي مادتك المفضلة؟  
**B: I like maths./**  
**B: My favourite subject is social studies.**  
أحب الرياضيات/مادتي المفضلة هي الدراسات الاجتماعية.  
**A: How many lessons do you have every day?**  
كم عدد الحصص التي لديك كل يوم؟  
**B: I have seven lessons every day.**  
لدي سبع حصص يوميًا.  
**A: What time is break?**  
متى تكون الفسحة؟  
**B: It's at eleven o'clock.**  
في الحادية عشرة تمامًا.  
**A: Who is our teacher of English this year?**  
من هو مدرسنا في اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام؟  
**B: Mr Mohamed Mesbah.**  
الأستاذ محمد مصباح.  
**A: How do you travel to school?**  
كيف تسافر للمدرسة؟  
**B: I travel to school by bus.**  
أسافر للمدرسة بالأتوبيس.



### A Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How is the weather in the USA in winter? نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب
- a) Rainy.                  b) Sunny.                  c) Windy.                  d) Snowy.
2. How do the children go to school there?
- a) By bus.    b) By car.  
 c) In a canoe.    d) On a snowmobile.
3. How is their journey to school?
- a) Fast.    b) Fun.  
 c) Both a & b.    d) Neither a nor b.
4. How is the weather when they go to school?
- a) Hot.    b) Cold.    c) Wet.    d) Cool.

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Dina is asking Jana about her typical day.**

- Dina : When do you get up?
- Jana : (1).....
- Dina : (2).....?
- Jana : I have breakfast at six thirty.
- Dina : (3).....?
- Jana : I go to school at eight o'clock.
- Dina : What time do you come home from school?
- Jana : (4).....
- Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch?
- Jana : (5).....

## C Reading Comprehension

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mustafa. I'm in preparatory one at Tanta Prep School. When I was at primary school, I walked there every day as it was not far from my house. It took me only 10 minutes to get there. This year, my school is far from my house. I get up early every day and take a bus. The streets are very busy, so it takes me a long time to go and **come back**. My dad is friendly, he bought me a bike. It is wonderful. I sometimes cycle to school. Bikes are a healthy way to travel.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think Mustafa cycles to school?

.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mustafa is at Tanta Prep School for ..... year(s).

a) one                      b) two                      c) three                      d) four

5. The opposite of "come back" is .....

a) go                      b) take out                      c) come to                      d) get up

6. Mustafa goes to his school by .....

a) taxi                      b) car                      c) train                      d) bus

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

دمياط ٢٠٢٣

1. Girls learn how to cook in the .....

a) Arabic                      b) science  
c) maths                      d) home economics

2. My journey to school ..... about 30 minutes.

a) talks                      b) wakes                      c) takes                      d) makes

3. A: What time is it? B: It's half ..... twelve.

a) on                      b) in                      c) to                      d) past

4. The ..... rings at the beginning and the end of the lessons.

a) ball                      b) pin                      c) bin                      d) bell

المنوفية ٢٠٢٠

5. I usually eat cheese and eggs ..... breakfast.  
 a) with                      b) to                      c) by
6. Swimming is my ..... hobby. I like it.  
 a) expensive                b) favourite              c) bad
7. I like English and French. I'm good at .....  
 a) sports                      b) languages              c) objects
8. We ..... go to school on Fridays. It's a holiday.  
 a) often                      b) sometimes              c) always
9. Sandy is one of ..... friends.  
 a) Leila's                      b) Leilas'                      c) Leilas
10. My brother ..... a clever tennis player.  
 a) always                      b) is always                      c) always is

d) for

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

d) radio

d) subjects

الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

d) never

d) Leila

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢

d) never

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. The mall usually is crowded at the weekend. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. How often are you travel by plane? (.....)
3. That beautiful blouse is my mothers. (.....)
4. Nour grows always plants in their garden. (.....)

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"School rules"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!

## October Model 1



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Samir is asking Yehia about his favourite sport.**

**Samir:** Good morning.

**Yehia:** Good morning. Can I ask you some more questions?

**Samir:** (1).....

**Yehia:** Do you have any hobbies?

**Samir:** (2).....

**Yehia:** (3).....?

**Samir:** My favourite sport is football.

**Yehia:** (4).....?

**Samir:** I play it on Fridays.

**Yehia:** (5).....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your sister is your parents' .....

- a) son                      b) uncle                      c) aunt                      d) daughter

2. My uncle travels a lot. He has a lot of .....

- a) notebooks                      b) objects                      c) adventures                      d) subjects

3. Athletes work hard to ..... their studies, work and their families.

- a) practice                      b) balance                      c) arrive                      d) volunteer

4. We arrived at Luxor Airport at quarter ..... six.

- a) past                      b) paste                      c) post                      d) pasta

5. I can hear the ..... It's time for the English lesson.

- a) bell                      b) bill                      c) hall                      d) ball

6. Children in Uganda cross the lake in a .....
- a) bus                      b) taxi                      c) canoe
7. I usually ..... my homework after school.
- a) have                      b) make                      c) take
8. What time does school ..... every day?
- a) starting                      b) start                      c) starts
9. Tell ..... about your family.
- a) mine                      b) my                      c) me
10. It's ..... pencil case.
- a) Ali                      b) Ali's                      c) Alis

d) snowmobile

d) do

d) started

d) I

d) Alis'

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. I usually plays basketball on Sundays.
2. She don't like playing tennis.
3. He helps always his father with his work.
4. **A:** Who's pencil is yours? **B:** The red one.
5. **A:** How many do you walk to school? **B:** Always.

(.....)

(.....)


(.....)


(.....)

(.....)


Part 2

Final Revision





قم بمراجعة  
أهم المفردات  
والقواعد اللغوية  
والمهارات وحل  
المزيد من الأسئلة  
الخاصة بالوحدتين  
الأولى والثانية عن  
طريق الذهاب لجزء  
المراجعة الشهرية  
بملحق التقييم.



Check your answers

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... is a game for two people.  
 a) Football                      b) Handball                      c) Chess                      d) Volleyball
2. Basmala works hard to ..... her dreams.  
 a) sleep                      b) achieve                      c) have                      d) take
3. When her parents died in an accident, she became a/an .....  
 a) orphan                      b) kind                      c) age                      d) baby
4. As a gymnast, Ola ..... for 5 or 6 hours daily to be fit.  
 a) teaches                      b) trains                      c) studies                      d) swims
5. I learnt how to cook in the ..... lessons.  
 a) computer studies                      b) social studies                      c) home economics                      d) maths
6. I always borrow books from the school .....  
 a) lab                      b) library                      c) bookshop                      d) hall
7. People in Egypt are very ..... Many tourists like them.  
 a) friendly                      b) unfriendly                      c) scary                      d) boring
8. Girls always ..... to pop music.  
 a) listening                      b) are listening                      c) listens                      d) listen
9. .... Nabil's sister play handball?  
 a) Does                      b) Do                      c) Is                      d) Are
10. Fouad is one of ..... friends.  
 a) Samy's                      b) Samys'                      c) Samys                      d) Samy

**2 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. That pen is me and this is yours. (.....)
2. Where's the teachers room, please? (.....)
3. Who pencil case is this? (.....)
4. That's my father car. (.....)
5. Soliman always walks to school. It's too far. (.....)

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hatem and Hazem are talking about the school day.**

**Hatem :** What's your favourite subject, Hazem?

**Hazem :** (1).....

**Hatem :** (2).....?

**Hazem :** Mr Samir is our English teacher this year.

**Hatem :** He's a good teacher. (3).....?

**Hazem :** We have English today after break. Then we have maths.

**Hatem :** Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths?

**Hazem :** (4)..... I like maths.

**Hatem :** What time is the break?

**Hazem :** (5).....

**2 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

"Heidi" is the story of an **orphan** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the passage mainly about?

.....

2. What do you think of Heidi's life?

.....

3. Where does Heidi sleep?

.....



**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Heidi's grandfather has lots of .....  
a) dogs    b) cats  
c) goats    d) lions
5. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to .....  
a) Peter    b) Heidi's grandfather  
c) Heidi's mother    d) Heidi's cousin
6. The underlined word "orphan" means someone who has no .....  
a) money    b) friends  
c) parents    d) father or mother

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. That car belongs to my uncle. It's him. (.....)
2. We often goes shopping at the weekend. (.....)
3. He always swims. He can't swim. (.....)
4. This is me phone. It's new. (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about Eighty (80) words on:**

**"A day in your school"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Unit 3

# Different people

### *Objectives of the unit*

- Reading** A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
- Writing** A blog post about a friend
- Listening** Descriptions of people
- Speaking** Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes
- Language** have / has got; can / can't
- Life Skills** Respect for diversity; resilience

Tapescripts





SB pages 22-25 | WB pages 86 &amp; 87

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية			
famous (adj)	مشهور	look (ed) like	يشبه
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	moustache (n)	شارب
beard (n)	لحية	goal (n)	هدف
big smile	ابتسامة كبيرة	runner (n)	عداء/متسابق جري
Europe (n)	أوروبا	sports star (n)	نجم رياضي
fan (n)	معجب/مشجع	team (n)	فريق
أنواع الشعر			
curly hair	شعر مجعد	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
dark hair	شعر داكن	blond hair	شعر أشقر
short hair	شعر قصير	long hair	شعر طويل
ألعاب رياضية			
basketball (n)	كرة السلة	squash (n)	الإسكواش
running (n)	الجرى	volleyball (n)	الكرة الطائرة

### Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية			
carry (y/ied) (v)	يحمل	normal (adj)	عادي/طبيعي
description (n)	وصف	person (n)	شخص
insect (n)	حشرة	present (n)	هدية
Italian (n/adj)	اللغة الإيطالية/إيطالي	the Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
glasses (n)	نظارة/نظارات	tortoise (n)	سلحفاة

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **tiger – tortoise – footballer – like**

- 1 Mohamed Salah is an amazing .....
- 2 What does your best friend look .....?
- 3 The ..... is a very slow animal.

يهدف هذا التحري  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition  
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Different people

101

## Language Expressions

jump > high	يقفز عاليًا	score > a goal	يحرز/يسجل هدفًا
play > video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو	take > a holiday	يأخذ إجازة
talk to > fans	يتكلم مع المعجبين	give > money	يعطى (يتبرع) بالمال

## التعبيرات اللغوية

## Prepositions

easy for	سهل لـ	play for	يلعب لصالح
have time for	لدية وقت لـ	short for a footballer	قصير بالنسبة للاعب كرة القدم
go at + السرعة	تسير بسرعة ....	talk to	يتكلم مع/إلى
pick (ed) up	يلتقط	travel around	يسافر حول

## حروف الجر

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **for – around – score**

- Mohamed Salah can ..... a lot of goals.
- Cristiano Ronaldo plays ..... Al Nasr Football Club in the KSA.

يهدف هذا التحريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
build	يبني	built	built	give	يعطي	gave	given
fly	يطير	flew	flown	win	يفوز/يكسب	won	won

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
fast	سريع	slow	بطيء
poor	فقير	rich	غني
strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف
tall	طويل	short	قصير

## الكلمات وعكسها

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



- tall** ↑

  - My brother is **tall**.

**long** →

  - She's got **long** hair.

(طويل) (طول رأسى)

(طويل) (طول أفقى)

## 2 How to describe someone's hair:

كيفية وصف شعر شخص ما:

01 size

long  
short

02 colour

dark  
black

03 pattern

curly  
straight

04 noun

hair

- Mohamed Salah has got long, dark, curly hair.

## 3 What + do/does + الفاعل + look like?

للسؤال عن الملامح نستخدم

- What does your father look like?
- He's got short, dark hair.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



### Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف جيداً
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
football (n)	كرة قدم	-er		تحويل الاسم إلى اسم فاعل		footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم

### Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطي عكس المعنى		funny (adj)	مضحك	unfunny (adj)	غير مضحك

### Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
hair	شعر	hear	يسمع
fans	معجبون	fins	زعانف السمكة
beard	لحية	bread	خبز

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.




## B Reading & Listening Skills

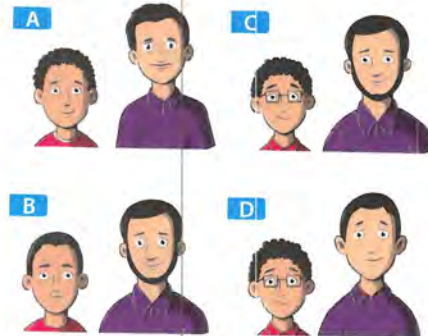
### Lesson 1

#### Pre-listening question:

- What does your father look like?

 Listen. Tick (✓) the picture of Samir.

SB page 23



**Mazin** There's my friend, Samir.

**Mum** I don't know Samir. What does he look like<sup>(1)</sup>?

(1) يشبه (2) شعر غامق قصير

**Mazin** He's got short, dark hair<sup>(2)</sup>.

(3) نظارة (4) لحية

**Mum** Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses<sup>(3)</sup>?

**Mazin** No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

**Mum** Has Samir's dad got a beard<sup>(4)</sup>?

**Mazin** Yes, he has.

**Mum** Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.




**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:  
beard /biərd/

#### Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Mazin's mother has met Samir before? How do you know?

 Complete the descriptions with these words:


WB page 86



The woman in the first picture has got long straight **hair** and **glasses**. The man in the second picture has got **short curly** dark hair and a **moustache**. The second woman has got short **blond** hair. The second man has got short dark **hair** and a **beard**.

## Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Mohamed Salah?

 Look at the photo. What do you know about this sports star?

SB page 24

Mohamed Salah is my favourite **sports star**<sup>(1)</sup>.  
He plays football for a very good **team**<sup>(2)</sup> in **Europe**<sup>(3)</sup>.  
He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast runner**<sup>(4)</sup>.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a **big smile**<sup>(5)</sup>.  
He is **quite short**<sup>(6)</sup> for a **footballer**<sup>(7)</sup>. He is 1.75 metres **tall**<sup>(8)</sup>. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a **kind**<sup>(9)</sup> person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.  
He also gives money to **poor**<sup>(10)</sup> people. He is very **friendly**<sup>(11)</sup> and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Europe /'jʊərəp/

score /skɔ:'/

- |                  |                   |                    |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| (1) نجم رياضي    | (2) فريق          | (3) أوروبا         |
| (4) عداء سريع    | (5) ابتسامة كبيرة | (6) قصير إلى حد ما |
| (7) لاعب كرة قدم | (8) طويل          | (9) عطوف           |
| (10) فقير        | (11) ودود         |                    |

## Post-reading questions:

- 1 Mohamed Salah is a kind person. Explain.
- 2 Do you think Mohamed Salah is a role model? Why?

### Pre-listening question:

- Which sport would you like to practise?

 **Listen and circle the correct words.** *SB page 25*

My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.



 **Complete the sentences with can or can't.**

*WB page 87*



Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.

 **Note:**

England /'ɪŋɡlənd/

famous /feɪməs/

Italian /ɪtæliən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

### Post-reading question:

- How many languages can Mohamed Salah speak?





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** Has your sister got short hair? **B:** No, she has got ..... hair. القنوية ٢٠٢٢

a) long	b) slow	c) fast	d) kind
---------	---------	---------	---------
2. Her hair is ..... It is not straight. القنوية ٢٠٢٢

a) blond	b) short	c) curly	d) long
----------	----------	----------	---------
3. I have got short, dark, curly ..... القنوية ٢٠٢٣

a) hear	b) hair	c) ear	d) her
---------	---------	--------	--------
4. I can't see well, so I need ..... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) classes	b) glasses	c) shoes	d) books
------------	------------	----------	----------
5. Mohamed Salah has a big ..... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) smell	b) smile	c) mile	d) small
----------	----------	---------	----------
6. My sister likes writing stories. She wants to be a famous ..... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) writer	b) gymnast	c) nurse	d) singer
-----------	------------	----------	-----------
7. Mohammed Salah is quite short ..... a footballer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) on	b) to	c) at	d) for
-------	-------	-------	--------
8. He's Maher's brother. He looks ..... him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) like	b) by	c) with	d) near
---------	-------	---------	---------
9. She has got ..... hair. It's very long. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) street	b) straight	c) funny	d) hard
-----------	-------------	----------	---------
10. Mohamed Salah is very ..... He always talks to his fans. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) funny	b) rich	c) friendly	d) poor
----------	---------	-------------	---------
11. My cousin lives in Italy, but he can't ..... Italian well. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) speak	b) talk	c) tell	d) watch
----------	---------	---------	----------
12. I had many ..... on my birthday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) presents	b) films	c) holidays	d) features
-------------	----------	-------------	-------------
13. Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian ..... star. He is very famous. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) sport	b) sporty	c) sports	d) sport's
----------	-----------	-----------	------------

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salah can ..... a lot of goals. الغزاة ١٣-١  
 a) break                      b) save                      c) find                      d) score
2. My grandfather has got a big ..... on his mouth. الشارب ٢٣-٢  
 a) hair                      b) beard                      c) ear                      d) moustache
3. My hair is ..... It isn't straight. القصوة ٢٣-٤  
 a) blond                      b) curly                      c) short                      d) long
4. Mohammed Salah is friendly and always talks to his ..... المتحمس ٢٣-٤  
 a) pans                      b) pins                      c) vans                      d) fans
5. A ..... is a group of people who play a sport together. الفرقة ٢٣-٤  
 a) star                      b) goal                      c) footballer                      d) team
6. One of my hobbies is ..... video games.  
 a) playing                      b) scoring                      c) giving                      d) writing
7. Sara always reads ..... stories. They make her laugh.  
 a) sad                      b) unkind                      c) funny                      d) bad
8. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports ..... around the world.  
 a) moon                      b) sky                      c) high                      d) star
9. Speaking many languages isn't easy ..... most people.  
 a) with                      b) in                      c) at                      d) for
10. He was the first. He is really a fast .....  
 a) worker                      b) teacher                      c) runner                      d) writer
11. He has got dark hair and a ..... ملا ٢٣-٤  
 a) beard                      b) heard                      c) bird                      d) tired
12. My grandfather is kind. He helps ..... people.  
 a) famous                      b) strong                      c) rich                      d) poor
13. My father doesn't have much time ..... playing a sport.  
 a) at                      b) for                      c) on                      d) to

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

# C Language

## 1 Have/Has got

يملك/لديه/عنده

I You We They (اسم جمع)

> **have(n't) got .....**

- I have got short, curly hair.
- They haven't got curly hair.

**Form**  
التكوين

He She It (اسم مفرد)

> **has(n't) got .....**

- Mazin has got a bike.
- My mother hasn't got a car.

لاحظ

يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار بعد (have/has):

- Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile.

## Yes/No questions

**Have**  
I  
you  
we  
they  
(اسم جمع)

> **got ...?**

**Question**  
السؤال

**Has**  
he  
she  
it  
(اسم مفرد)

> **got ...?**

**A:** Have you got curly hair?

**B:** Yes, I have. / **B:** No, I haven't.

**A:** Has Mazin got a bike?

**B:** Yes, he has. / **B:** No, he hasn't.

## Wh-questions

Question word (أداة الاستفهام) + **has/have** + subj. (الفاعل) + **got ...?**

**A:** How many brothers have you got?

**B:** I have got three brothers.

 **Got it ?**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 She's get blond hair.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (got) لوجود 's وهي اختصار **has**.

2 **A:** Have you got glasses? **B:** No, I have.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (haven't) لوجود **No** الدالة على النفي.

Different people

109

## Form &amp; Usage: التكوين والاستخدام:

## Subject + can + inf. يستطيع

We use **can** to say what we are able to do:  
نستخدم (can + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء.

- We **can** give money to help poor people.
- I **can** read English books.

## Subject + can't + inf. لا يستطيع

We use **cannot/can't** to say what we are not able to do:  
نستخدم (can't + inf.) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء.

- I **can't** pick up that box. My arms are weak.
- I **can't** swim well.

## Question

## Can + subject + inf. ...?

**A:** Can you play the drums?

**B:** Yes, I can.

**A:** Can Eman play chess?

**B:** No, she can't.

## لاحظ

Subject + can + inf. = Subject + am/is/are + able to + inf.

• Sara **can** ride a bike.

= Sara **is able to** ride a bike.

تستخدم **can** للطلب أو الاستئذان:

• **Can** I have a cup of coffee, please?

## Got it ?

تمتلك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

## Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Omar can't flew a kite. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (fly) لأن **can't** يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر.

2 He can drive his father's car? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Can he) لأنه توجد علامة استفهام فيجب تقديم **Can** على الفاعل **he**.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother has ..... a laptop. بؤر سفند ٢٠٢٢  
 a) get                      b) got                      c) gets                      d) getting
2. **A:** Have you got long hair? **B:** No, I ..... got short hair. النسب ٢٠٢٣  
 a) have                      b) haven't                      c) has                      d) hasn't
3. We ..... got a big house. Our house is small. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) hasn't                      b) haven't                      c) aren't                      d) weren't
4. Mohamed Salah has ..... dark, curly hair. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) gets                      b) get                      c) got                      d) getting
5. I ..... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) have                      b) hasn't                      c) haven't                      d) has
6. My father has ..... a smartphone. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) get                      b) got                      c) gets                      d) getting
7. All my brothers and sisters ..... dark, curly hair.  
 a) has got                      b) have got                      c) are got                      d) is got
8. .... Faten's dad got a red car?  
 a) Has                      b) Have                      c) Do                      d) Does
9. I ..... got brown hair. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢  
 a) don't have                      b) hasn't                      c) doesn't have                      d) haven't
10. .... got straight hair?  
 a) Have you                      b) You have                      c) You are                      d) Are you

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Has you got a mobile phone? (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
3. Your father has get a good job. (.....)
4. Have you got a brother? Yes, I haven't. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. My best friend have got short, dark hair. (.....) الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
6. We is got an apple tree in our garden. (.....) الغربية ٢٠٢٢
7. I'm busy, I can come with you right now. (.....)

## Time to Practise



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ▶ 1. What sports ..... you play well?  
 a) can                      b) are                      c) have                      d) has
2. My dad only speaks English. He ..... speak French.  
 a) can                      b) can't                      c) have                      d) haven't
3. .... I use your pen, please?  
 a) Can                      b) Has                      c) Have                      d) Are
4. They ..... live here, the weather is too cold.  
 a) can't                      b) aren't                      c) haven't                      d) hasn't
5. I'm sorry, I ..... help you today, I'm really busy.  
 a) can                      b) can't                      c) have                      d) haven't
6. The girls can ..... squash.  
 a) play                      b) plays                      c) played                      d) playing
7. I can ride a bike, but I ..... drive a car.  
 a) am not                      b) am                      c) can                      d) can't
8. Look! Ali is there! ..... see him?  
 a) You have                      b) Have you                      c) Can you                      d) You can
9. I'm sure you ..... do your homework alone. It's very easy!  
 a) are                      b) aren't                      c) can't                      d) can
10. I ..... speak French, but I know how to write it.  
 a) can                      b) can't                      c) have                      d) haven't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- ▶ 1. Can your sister singing well? (.....)
2. He can't picked up that box. (.....) التيوم ٢٣ - ٢٤
3. **A:** Can she fly a kite? **B:** Yes, she can't. (.....)
4. He can plays football very well. (.....)
5. I'm a good footballer. I can't play well. (.....) التيوم ٢٣ - ٢٤

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



### How to write about your favourite sports star. كيفية الكتابة عن نجمك الرياضى المفضل.

- I like sports.
- My favourite sports star is (الاسم).
- He/She plays (الرياضة).
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (tall/short).
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (fast/strong).
- He/She has got (very/quite) (short/long/straight/curly) hair.
- He/She is (very/quite) ..... (kind/friendly).
- He/She always talks to his/her fans.

#### Writing tips

Note that.

لاحظ الاختصارات التالية:

has = 's

is = 's

have = 've

### Example

#### A sports star

I like sports. There are many sports stars all over the world. My favourite sports star is Mohamed Salah. I like him very much. He is a good footballer. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. So, all of us should be proud of him.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Mohamed Salah"

I like sports. ....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who is Basel?
  - a) His brother.
  - b) His father.
  - c) His uncle.
  - d) His friend.
2. What is his favourite subject?
  - a) Arabic.
  - b) Maths.
  - c) English.
  - d) Science.
3. What does he like?
  - a) Reading.
  - b) Video games.
  - c) Writing.
  - d) Both A and B.
4. What kind of hair has he got?
  - a) Curly.
  - b) Straight.
  - c) Blond.
  - d) Dark.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has long ..... hair. It's very beautiful.
  - a) around
  - b) straight
  - c) funny
  - d) poor
2. My uncle is very funny. He has a big ..... on his face.
  - a) smile
  - b) ear
  - c) eye
  - d) insect
3. How ..... is the Cairo Tower? It is 187 metres.
  - a) tall
  - b) long
  - c) wide
  - d) much
4. Mohamed Salah, Cristiano Ronaldo and Haaland are famous ..... .
  - a) dentists
  - b) footballers
  - c) teachers
  - d) accountants
5. In football matches, there are two ..... .
  - a) teams
  - b) times
  - c) players
  - d) matches
6. Our car can go ..... 150 km/h.
  - a) for
  - b) at
  - c) by
  - d) with
7. Adel Emam is a famous film ..... in Egypt.
  - a) star
  - b) moon
  - c) land
  - d) runner



8. Eman ..... lots of friends.  
 a) have got      b) haven't      c) has got      d) hasn't
9. This is too difficult! I ..... do it.  
 a) can      b) can't      c) have      d) haven't
10. We ..... a lot of homework to do.  
 a) are      b) can      c) has got      d) have got

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Have you get any brothers? (.....)
2. What is your sister look like? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. **A:** Can your uncle speak Chinese? **B:** Yes, he can't. (.....)
4. I can pick up that box. My arms are weak. (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**"Your favourite sports star"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- 1 Can you give me a ..... of your house?  
 a) feature      b) room      c) description      d) present
- 2 Adel ..... to climb that tree.  
 a) can      b) can't      c) able      d) is able
- 3 **A:** Have you got long hair? **B:** No. I ..... got short hair.  
 a) have      b) haven't      c) has      d) hasn't



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary			المفردات الرئيسية
adventure (n)	مغامرة	online diary	مفكرة على الإنترنت
blog post (n)	مَشور في مدونة	scary (adj)	مخيف
busy (adj)	مشغول	sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم
character (n)	شخصية	strange (adj)	غريب
heart (n)	قلب	Wonderland (n)	بلاد العجائب
history (n)	التاريخ	website (n)	موقع إنترنت

### Additional Vocabulary

Additional Vocabulary			المفردات الإضافية
children's story (n)	قصة أطفال	main (adj)	رئيسي/أساسي
clear (adj)	واضح	queen (n)	ملكة
information (n)	معلومة/معلومات	simple (adj)	بسيط

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **scary – busy – queen – simple**

- 1 A ..... is the wife زوجة of the king.
- 2 I can't play with you. I'm very .....
- 3 The lion is a ..... animal.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

Language Expressions			التعبيرات اللغوية
do	> art/maths	يدرس الرسم/الرياضيات	يغضب
go	> home	يذهب إلى البيت	يتخذ قرارات
	> swimming	يذهب للسباحة	مرتين في الأسبوع
		get > angry	
		make > decisions	
		twice > a week	

## Prepositions

## حروف الجر

at the end of	في نهاية	shout at	يصيح في
frightened of	خائف من	write on a website	يكتب في موقع إنترنت
learn about	يتعلم عن	play with	يلعب مع / بـ

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

make – of – at – do

- I like drawing. I ..... art after school.
- Children are usually frightened ..... dark places.
- Don't shout ..... your little brother.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللفوية  
وحروف الجر.

## Conjugations of irregular verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
begin يبدأ	began	begun	swim يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
draw يرسم	drew	drawn	think يعتقد	thought	thought

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
angry	غاضب	calm	هادئ
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
clever	ماهر/ذكي	stupid	غبى
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
late	متأخر	early	مبكر

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



- 1 like + (v+ing/n) يحب love (v+ing/n) يحب (بشدة)
- I like swimming.
  - I love learning about the past.

- 2 Adjectives ending with (ed/ing): الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed/ing):
- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف الكائن الحي الذي يشعر بهذه الصفة.
- He doesn't know what to do. He is **bored**.
- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الكائن الحي أو الشيء الذي يسبب هذه الصفة.
- The film was very **boring**. So, I didn't enjoy it.

- 3 Study these adjectives: ادرس هذه الصفات:
- A **clever** person knows a lot.
  - A **sensible** person advises people and makes good decisions.
  - A **brave** person is happy to do something dangerous.
  - Something **scary** makes you feel frightened.
  - A **busy** person is always doing something.
  - People often feel **angry** when they are unhappy about something.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



### Definitions

### التعريفات

blog	مدونة	A website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary.	بانتظام
------	-------	--	---------

### Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
angry	غاضب	cross	غاضب
clever	ماهر/ذكي	brilliant	متألق/ذكي

### Suffix


Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed		تحويل الفعل لصفة		frightened (adj)	خائف
sense (n)	حاسة	-ible		تحويل الاسم لصفة		sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 3

#### Pre-reading question:

- What would you like to tell us about yourself?

 Read the **blog post**<sup>(1)</sup> quickly. What is Yunis's favourite sport? **SB page 26**

### All about me



Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark, curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about **the past**<sup>(2)</sup>. I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at **drawing**<sup>(3)</sup> or **painting**<sup>(4)</sup>.

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming **twice**<sup>(5)</sup> a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think it is **boring**<sup>(6)</sup>.

(1) منشور على مدونة إلكترونية (2) الماضي

(3) الرسم (4) التلوين

(5) مرتين (6) ممل



#### Post-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think of watching TV?
- 2 Why doesn't Yunis like art?

### Pre-listening question:

- What kind of sports do you like?

 Listen to the game and write the order.

SB page 27

**Girl 1** Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it?

**Girl 2** Does she like watching TV?

**Girl 1** No, she doesn't.

**Girl 2** Does she like swimming<sup>(1)</sup>?

**Girl 1** Yes, she does.

**Girl 2** It's Noha.

**Girl 1** Good! OK. Number two. Who is it?

**Girl 2** Does she like swimming?

**Girl 1** Yes, she does. She loves swimming!

**Girl 2** Does she like playing basketball?

**Girl 1** No, she doesn't.

**Girl 2** It's Dina.

**Girl 1** Well done! Three. Who is this?

**Girl 2** Does she like watching TV?

**Girl 1** Yes, she does.

**Girl 2** It's Eman.

**Girl 1** No, it isn't.

**Girl 2** Does she like basketball?

**Girl 1** Yes, she does.

**Girl 2** It's Maya.

**Girl 1** Yes!

**Girl 2** OK, so the last one loves painting<sup>(2)</sup>, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

**Girl 1** Yes again!

### Post-listening question:

- Did you like the game? Why/ Why not?

**Dina**

swim

paint

play/basketball



**Noha**

swim

watch/TV

paint



**Eman**

watch/TV

paint

play/basketball



**Maya**

watch/TV

paint

play/basketball




(1) السباحة

(2) التلوين / الرسم

### Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite subject?

 Read the blogs and write the questions a–c in the correct place.

WB page 88

- a. Which sport do you like?
- b. What do you do in the evening?
- c. What is your favourite subject?

### c. What is your favourite subject?

- 1 My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.



### a. Which sport do you like?

- 2 I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

### b. What do you do in the evening?

- 3 I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

### Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think Riham isn't good at tennis?
- 2 What subjects is Riham good at?

## Pre-reading question:

- Who is your favourite writer?

 Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about? Is it a true story?

SB page 28

## Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

by Lewis Carroll

*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*<sup>(1)</sup> is a famous children's story. Alice's **adventure**<sup>(2)</sup> begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a **strange**<sup>(3)</sup> place. She is a **sensible**<sup>(4)</sup> girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also **brave**<sup>(5)</sup> and **clever**<sup>(6)</sup>. She meets a lot of interesting **characters**<sup>(7)</sup>.

Alice often sees **the White Rabbit**. The White Rabbit is very **busy**<sup>(8)</sup> – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

**The Cheshire Cat** is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

**The Queen of Hearts** is not very nice. She is a **scary**<sup>(9)</sup> person. She is always **angry**<sup>(10)</sup> and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not **frightened**<sup>(11)</sup> of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.



### Post-reading questions:

- 1 Alice is a brave girl. Explain.
- 2 What have you learnt from the story?

- |                  |            |          |
|------------------|------------|----------|
| (1) بلاد العجائب | (2) مغامرة | (3) غريب |
| (4) عامل         | (5) شجاع   | (6) ماهر |
| (7) شخصيات       | (8) مشغول  | (9) مخيف |
| (10) غاضب        | (11) خائف  |          |





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like ..... because I am very good at drawing.  
 a) art                      b) history                      c) science                      d) maths
2. I often ..... swimming on Fridays.  
 a) make                      b) catch                      c) go                      d) do
3. I do not like this programme. I think it is ..... .  
 a) boring                      b) cool                      c) interesting                      d) good
4. A busy person is always ..... . الحيرة ٢٠٢٣ WB  
 a) talking                      b) walking  
 c) laughing                      d) doing something
5. Something scary makes you feel ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣ WB  
 a) frightened                      b) happy                      c) funny                      d) free
6. Tamer is writing about his weekend in his online ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤  
 a) printer                      b) diary                      c) mouse                      d) laptop
7. A ..... person knows a lot. WB  
 a) brave                      b) busy                      c) clever                      d) sad
8. A blog is a/an ..... on which someone writes regularly. المسوفة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) website                      b) playground                      c) office                      d) library
9. People often feel ..... when they are unhappy about something.  
 a) weak                      b) strong                      c) hungry                      d) angry
10. A sensible person ..... good decisions.  
 a) goes                      b) watches                      c) makes                      d) does
11. I like history, so I love learning about the ..... .  
 a) present                      b) past                      c) now                      d) tomorrow
12. Alice is the main ..... in the story I read. الفاخرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) diary                      b) blog                      c) post                      d) character
13. She is a wise girl. This means she is ..... . حيفا ٢٠٢٣  
 a) naughty                      b) sensible                      c) bad                      d) lazy

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A brave person is happy to do something .....  
a) fun                      b) strange                      c) bad                      d) dangerous  
التمرين ٢٠٢٣
2. My father is ..... He thinks well.  
a) sensible                      b) nervous                      c) bored                      d) strange  
الاستماع ٢٠٢٢
3. She is a ..... person, she shouts at people.  
a) friendly                      b) sensible                      c) brave                      d) scary  
١٠٢٣
4. A blog is a/an ..... diary.  
a) online                      b) offline                      c) inline                      d) line  
٢٠٢٢
5. Ahmed likes ..... because he loves learning about the past.  
a) painting                      b) post                      c) post                      d) history
6. He didn't do his homework, so the teacher is very .....  
a) happy                      b) angry                      c) brave                      d) scared
7. I always ..... sport on holidays. My favourite sport is football.  
a) play                      b) make                      c) go                      d) take
8. She is good at art. She loves .....  
a) playing                      b) swimming                      c) painting                      d) printing
9. I like ..... maths. I am quite good at maths.  
a) giving                      b) making                      c) playing                      d) doing
10. I like reading books and ..... stories.  
a) giving                      b) writing                      c) helping                      d) doing
11. We can't live without a .....  
a) heart                      b) beard                      c) moustache                      d) leg
12. Who is the main ..... of the story?  
a) character                      b) website                      c) adventure                      d) heart
13. I usually go swimming on Fridays. I do it .....  
a) kindly                      b) clearly                      c) nicely                      d) regularly

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





## 1. Speaking

### Describing a character from a story

وصف شخصية من قصة

**Situation**

ما يقال في هذا الموقف

**Response**

جملة الرد

← online
📺 📞 ⋮

She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.  
هي شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هي تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.

She's Alice.  إنها «أليس».

He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.  
هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متأخر ويجري بسرعة دائماً.

He's the White Rabbit.  إنه «وايت رابيت».

He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.  
هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جداً.

He's the Cheshire Cat.  إنه «شيشاير كات».

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Noha is asking Sara about reading.**

الشرطة ٢٠٢٣

**Noha** : Hi, Sara. How are you?

**Sara** : (1).....

**Noha** : Do you like reading?

**Sara** : (2)..... I like reading books very much.

**Noha** : (3).....?

**Sara** : I read books at the library.

**Noha** : (4).....?

**Sara** : My favourite book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

**Noha** : Is it interesting?

**Sara** : (5).....



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة  
فقرة بشكل جيد.



### 1. How to write about your favourite book.

كيف تكتب عن كتابك المفضل.

- I like reading.
- I like reading books by (اسم الكاتب).
- My favourite book is (اسم القصة / الكتاب).
- It's about a girl/boy called (الشخصية).

#### Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الفقرة هي مجموعة من الجمل التي تقدم موضوعاً  
أو فكرة واحدة.

#### Example

##### The book I like

I like reading because reading is my favourite hobby. I like reading books by Lewis Carroll. My favourite storybook is *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. It's about a girl called Alice. Alice has a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She meets the White Rabbit which is always late. She also meets the Cheshire Cat which has a big smile, at last she meets the Queen of Hearts. She is always angry and shouts at people. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

### 2. How to write about your best friend.

كيف تكتب عن صديقك المفضل.

- My best friend is called (الاسم).
- He/She has got (صفة) hair.
- He/She likes (هواياته).
- I like him/her because he/she is a lot of fun.

#### Example

##### My best friend

I have many friends. We go to school together. I like to spend good time with them. We usually play together. We help each other. I like them all, but my best friend is called Fatma. She's got long, straight hair. She's got brown eyes. She's very friendly. She likes reading and playing squash. I like her because she's a lot of fun. She helps me when I need help. She usually visits me at home. My parents like her, too. They say that she's a good girl. I hope we go to the same university.

**1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

القراءة ٢٢-٢٠

I like reading short stories so much. One of my favourite stories is "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland". It is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was a strange, but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helps Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person but Alice was not frightened of her.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is this passage about?

.....

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice?

.....

3. What do you think of Alice?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to .....

a) the White Rabbit

b) the Cheshire Cat

c) Alice

d) the Queen of Hearts

5. Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a ..... story.

a) detective

b) comic

c) children's

d) history

6. The underlined word "famous" means .....

a) unknown

b) silly

c) funny

d) well-known

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He is very ..... He has a big smile.

a) busy

b) brave

c) angry

d) funny

2. Alice had a lot of ..... in Wonderland.

a) adventures

b) places

c) devices

d) water

3. Sally is always angry and she shouts ..... people.

a) on

b) at

c) in

d) about

4. He's very ....., so he is not frightened of anything.

a) brave

b) busy

c) angry

d) uncle

5. My grandfather is ..... He gives us good advice.

a) bad

b) sensible

c) scary

d) worried

6. She is the ..... of this country. She is the most important person there.

a) story

b) character

c) queen

d) worker

7. I usually visit my grandmother ..... a week.  
 a) double                      b) second                      c) two                      d) twice
8. Nahla ..... go out tonight. She has an exam tomorrow. المنبوية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) can't                      b) haven't                      c) will                      d) can
9. My little sister has ..... a doll.  
 a) get                      b) got                      c) gets                      d) getting
10. What ..... Sara got? السرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) have                      b) has                      c) having                      d) to have

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Have Samir got a beard? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. How many lessons do you got today? (.....) المنبوية ٢٠٢٢
3. I can't open the door. I have got a key. (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
4. You can giving money to the poor. (.....) السرقية ٢٠٢٢

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Your favourite story"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- 1 I like meeting ..... people. They are very nice.  
 a) bored                      b) boring  
 c) interesting                      d) interested
- 2 Clever, brave and sensible are .....  
 a) nouns                      b) verbs  
 c) adjectives                      d) adverbs
- 3 Children often ..... to get what they want.  
 a) shout                      b) go  
 c) write                      d) make



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

exciting (adj)	مثير	secret (n/adj)	سر/سرى
garden (n)	حديقة (منزل)	storm (n)	عاصفة
island (n)	جزيرة	treasure (n)	كنز
review (n)	نقد	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

appearance (n)	مظهر	personality (n)	شخصية
(be) called (v)	يسمى/يدعى	pool (n)	حوض السباحة
cool (adj)	رائع	the country (n)	الريف

### المفردات الإضافية

### Language Expressions

have > lunch	يتناول الغداء	make > a poster	يعمل ملصقًا إعلانيًا
He is a lot of fun.	إنه ممتع للغاية.	make > notes	يدون ملاحظات

### التعبيرات اللغوية

### Prepositions

different from	مختلف عن	think of	يعتقد في
difficult for	صعب لـ	travel around	يتنقل حول
far from	بعيد عن	work on a boat	يعمل على قارب

### حروف الجر

#### Check Point

Choose and complete: **island – the country – from – cool – garden**

- 1 The weather is very ..... in spring.
- 2 My grandfather has a farm in .....
- 3 Elephantine ..... is in Aswan.
- 4 My school is far ..... my house.

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



**1 Asking about someone's personality:** السؤال عن الصفات الشخصية لشخص ما:

What + is/are + (الفاعل) + like? ما صفاته؟

- A: What is your teacher like?
- B: He's kind and friendly.

**2 Asking about someone's hobbies:** السؤال عن هوايات شخص ما:

What + do/does + (الفاعل) + like doing? ماذا يحب أن يفعل؟

- A: What do you like doing?
- B: I like playing football.

**3 Joining words:** روابط (الإضافة / التناقض / السبب / النتيجة):

and

و (للعطف والإضافة)

- He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together.

but

ولكن (للتناقض)

- Basel can't run, but he's fast in his wheelchair.

because

لأن (للسبب)

- I like Basel because he's a lot of fun.

so

لذلك (للنتيجة)

- Basel's a lot of fun, so I like him.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



### Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
exciting	مثير	interesting	شيق

### Suffix

اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
appear (v)	يظهر	-ance		تحويل الفعل لاسم		appearance (n)	مظهر
excite (v)	يثير	-ing		تحويل الفعل لصفة		exciting (adj)	مثير




## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 5

#### Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite book?

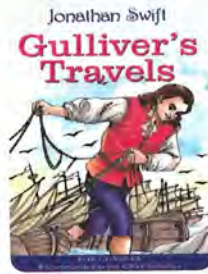
 Match the book reviews to the names of the books. Then write them.

WB page 90



آن من المرتفعات الخضراء

My favourite book is *Anne of Green Gables* by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



رحلات غوليفر

My favourite book is called *Gulliver's Travels*, by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.



جزيرة الكنز

My favourite book is *Treasure Island*. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.

#### Note:

orphan /ɔ:'fən/    treasure /treʒə/    island /aɪlənd/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

#### Post-reading question:

- Which story did you like most? Why?

## Listen and complete the sentences.

WB page 90

1. My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

## Read Fady's blog post. Why can't Fady and Basel always do the same things?

Lesson 6

SB page 30

### Who's your best friend?

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a **wheelchair**<sup>(1)</sup> because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things **together**<sup>(2)</sup>. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

**Fady, 12**



(1) كرسى متحرك (2) معاً/سويًا

### Life Skills

1. How are people in your life different from you?
2. Are differences important? Why/ Why not?



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Yunis likes watching TV because he thinks it's .....  
 a) bad                      b) exciting                      c) ugly                      d) boring  
القريبة ٢٠٢٢
2. You should never tell your ..... to other people.  
 a) secret                      b) post                      c) poster                      d) note  
الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
3. Hany has got a ..... because he can't walk.  
 a) table                      b) ladder                      c) pool                      d) wheelchair  
الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. Nasser is not very good at maths, ..... he is very good at English.  
 a) so                      b) because                      c) and                      d) but
5. I like Ahmed because he is a lot of .....  
 a) fins                      b) fans                      c) fun                      d) falls  
القلوبية ٢٠٢٢
6. This is not my book: it's different ..... mine.  
 a) from                      b) at                      c) on                      d) about  
الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
7. She went to live with her grandparents in the ..... It's quiet there.  
 a) capital                      b) boat                      c) country                      d) city
8. He likes the sea. He wants to work ..... a boat.  
 a) out                      b) to                      c) on                      d) of
9. We usually ..... lunch at four o'clock.  
 a) do                      b) have                      c) go                      d) write
10. We have a house with a big ..... We plant some trees there.  
 a) garden                      b) pool                      c) island                      d) secret
11. Life is not easy ..... poor people.  
 a) for                      b) at                      c) on                      d) in
12. This is a good book. I read a good ..... about it.  
 a) treasure                      b) country                      c) review                      d) poster
13. We went on a school trip. It was ..... I enjoyed so much.  
 a) cool                      b) boring                      c) strange                      d) bad

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

Ahmed asks Hossam about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport, Hossam?

Hossam : (1).....

Ahmed : Why are you good at it?

Hossam : (2).....

Ahmed : (3).....?

Hossam : I play basketball in the club.

Ahmed : (4).....?

Hossam : I play basketball twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you?

Hossam : (5).....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A ..... is something you don't want people to know about.

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| a) secretary | b) truth |
| c) secret    | d) lie   |

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

2. He can't walk, he needs a .....

- |          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| a) chain | b) swing      |
| c) wing  | d) wheelchair |

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

3. The first day at school was ..... I liked it so much.

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) exciting | b) boring |
| c) ugly     | d) bad    |

4. He likes reading and ..... video games.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| a) writing | b) playing |
| c) making  | d) doing   |

5. An email is a simple ..... sent through the internet.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| a) gift    | b) passage  |
| c) message | d) notebook |

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

6. He has a kind, friendly ..... We all like him.

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| a) storm   | b) review      |
| c) problem | d) personality |

7. Students should ..... notes of what their teachers say.  
 a) make                      b) do                      c) play                      d) catch
8. I love swimming, ..... I don't like swimming in the sea.  
 a) so                      b) but                      c) because                      d) and
9. He is kind ..... he is very funny.  
 a) and                      b) so                      c) but                      d) because
10. Mayar loves ..... on Fridays.  
 a) cook                      b) cooked                      c) cooking                      d) to cooking

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Basmala gets up late on Friday so it's a holiday. (.....)
2. I like football because I don't like watching matches on TV. (.....)
3. I wasn't hungry, but I didn't eat. (.....)
4. I love English, Arabic so Italian. (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Your best friend"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- 1 "Gulliver's Travels", ..... Jonathan Swift, is about a clever doctor.  
 a) for                      b) with                      c) at                      d) by
- 2 This book is about a brave boy ..... Jim.  
 a) is called                      b) called                      c) calling                      d) calls
- 3 I like Basel because he is a lot of .....  
 a) smile                      b) cool                      c) fun                      d) funny

## Vocabulary

adventure	مغامرة
island	جزيرة
angry	غاضب
appearance	مظهر
moustache	شارب
beard	لحية
personality	شخصية
runner	عداء/متسابق جري
character	شخصية
children's story	قصة أطفال
sensible	عاقل/حكيم
curly	مجمد
sports star	نجم رياضى
storm	عاصفة
exciting	مثير
strange	غريب
famous	مشهور
team	فريق
the country	إثريف
wonderland	بلاد العجائب
friendly	ودود
treasure	كنز
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
fan	معجب/مشجع

## Language

### 1. Have / Has got

#### Affirmative

- I **have got** short, curly hair.
- Mazin **has got** a bike.

#### Negative

- They **haven't got** curly hair.
- My dad **hasn't got** a beard.

#### Question

- **Have you got** glasses?
- **Has your father got** a beard?

### 2. Can / Can't

#### Affirmative

- We **can give** money to help poor people.
- I **can read** English books.

#### Negative

- I **can't pick up** that box. My arms are weak.
- I **can't swim** well.

#### Question

- **A: Can you play** the drums?  
**B: Yes, I can.**
- **A: Can Eman play** chess?  
**B: No, she can't.**

## Skills

### Describing a character from a story

- She's clever, brave and sensible. She goes to Wonderland.
- هي شخصية ماهرة وشجاعة وعاقلة. هي تذهب إلى بلاد العجائب.
- **She's Alice.**  
إنها "أليس".
- He is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.  
هو مشغول جداً. هو عادة متأخر ويجرى بسرعة دائماً.
- **He's the White Rabbit.**  
إنه "الوايت رابت".
- He is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.  
هو مضحك. لديه ابتسامة كبيرة وودود جداً.
- **He's the Cheshire Cat.**  
إنه "شيشاير كات".





## A Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What is your favourite book?

a) Alice.

b) Treasure Island.

c) Gulliver's Travels.

d) Anne of Green Gables.

2. Who wrote it?

a) Jonathan Swift.

b) Lucy Maud.

c) Robert Louis.

d) Shakespeare.

3. What is it about?

a) A sailor.

b) A brave boy.

c) An orphan.

d) A doctor.

4. Where does he/she work?

a) In a garden.

b) On a boat.

c) At a hospital.

d) At a school.

## B Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

تكمّل الحوار

**Asmaa and Sara are talking about sport.**

**Sara** : Hi, Asmaa. How are you?

**Asmaa** : (1).....

**Sara** : (2).....?

**Asmaa** : My favourite sport is football.

**Sara** : (3).....?

**Asmaa** : I play it at the club.

**Sara** : Who is your favourite player?

**Asmaa** : (4).....

**Sara** : Does he score a lot of goals?

**Asmaa** : (5).....

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

كمر الشرج ١١٢٢

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark, straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia governorate with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He likes it greatly. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground. I like him because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?  
.....
2. What do you think of Akram?  
.....
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?  
.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Akram has got ....., straight hair.  
a) dark                      b) light                      c) red                      d) brown
5. Akram lives in ..... governorate.  
a) Qena                      b) Qalyoubia                      c) Gharbia                      d) Cairo
6. Akram doesn't like art because he is ..... at art.  
a) good                      b) brilliant                      c) clever                      d) bad

## D Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haaland ..... many goals every year.  
a) plays                      b) helps                      c) takes                      d) scores
2. I am a ..... of Mohammad Salah.  
a) fan                      b) fan                      c) fun                      d) customer
3. He has three cars and three houses. He is very .....  
a) rich                      b) poor                      c) weak                      d) fast



4. There are many interesting ..... in this story. الحيرة ٢٠٢٠  
 a) devices      b) characters      c) players      d) actors
5. A ..... person is the person who always thinks carefully. القليوية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) fat      b) strong      c) sensible      d) lazy
6. Hani uses a ..... to go to school because he can't walk. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢  
 a) pencil case      b) wheelchair      c) sharpener      d) pencil
7. My teacher asked me to ..... a poster about a famous person.  
 a) make      b) do      c) stay      d) save
8. .... got any questions to ask?  
 a) You have      b) Have you      c) Do you      d) You do
9. My son ..... got blue eyes.  
 a) does      b) is      c) have      d) has
10. I can't ..... my coffee. It's too hot.  
 a) to drink      b) drinks      c) drink      d) drinking

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. I'm tired, so I went to bed very late. (.....)
2. We can't go now. I am ready. (.....)
3. The music is so loud. I can't hearing you. (.....)
4. She can jumps very high. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

**"A famous sports star"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

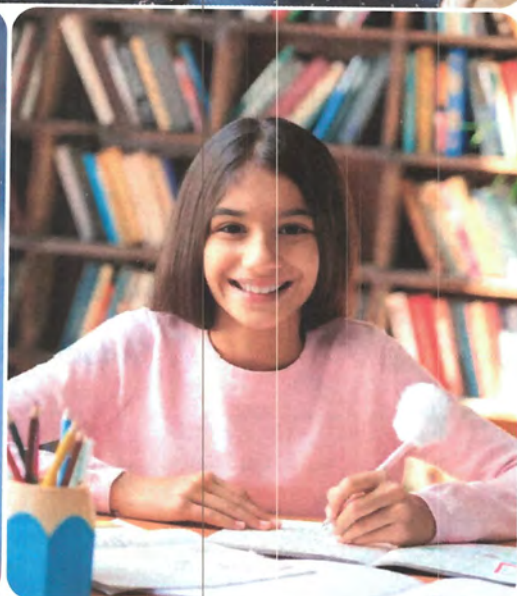
65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!

# Review A



## Units 1, 2 & 3

### Pre-reading question:

- What is your father's job?

 Read the text. Write a title and circle the correct words.

SB page 32

1.

This is my aunt. **Her** name's Amal. She's **my** mum's sister. She's got long, dark, curly hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



2.

This is my uncle. **His** name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall! He's a teacher and he's very clever.



3.

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children – a son and a daughter. They're my cousins. **Their** names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly.



4.

Malak is two. She's got short, straight hair. She likes playing with **her** toys. She usually has a big smile. I think she's very funny.



### Post-reading question:

- Why do you think Malak is funny?

**Pre-listening question:**

- Do you think that children like their schools? Why?


 **Listen and circle the correct words.**

**WB page 93**

**Aya** Hi! My name is Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I have got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject is Art. I love drawing. I am not very good at it, but I want to be! We have Art at quarter to eleven, after Maths and before English. I have got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever.



**Lesson 2**

 **Listen to Shady talking about his day. Circle the correct words. SB page 33**

**Woman** What time do you get up, Shady?

**Shady** I usually get up at a quarter to seven on a school day.

**Woman** How do you travel to school?

**Shady** I always walk to school with my brother. We never go by car.

**Woman** Do you like school?

**Shady** Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

**Woman** And what do you do after school?

**Shady** I sometimes play sport. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

**Woman** Do you have any other hobbies? Do you play chess?

**Shady** No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music or watch TV.



**Post-listening question:** - What do you usually do in your free time?



## Unit 4

# We're using technology!

### *Objectives of the unit*

- Reading** A text message conversation; a text about hobbies
- Writing** A paragraph and a poster about online safety
- Listening** A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call
- Speaking** Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions
- Language** There is / there are; the present continuous
- Life Skills** Problem solving; resilience

Tapescripts



WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب



## A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

### Key Vocabulary

3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	printer (n)	الطابعة
click on the icon	ينقر على أيقونة (بالكمبيوتر)	send a photo	يرسل صورة
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
look at a website	يلقي نظرة على موقع إلكتروني	tablet (n)	الجهاز اللوحي (تابليت)
mouse (n)	فأرة الكمبيوتر	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
MP3 player (n)	مشغل إم بي ثري	tap on the icon	يضغط على أيقونة (بالمهاتف)
phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف	use technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا
print (ed) (v)	يطبع	write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Language Expressions

design > an icon	يصمم أيقونة	make > a model	يصنع نموذجاً
do > computer studies	يدرس الكمبيوتر	make > chess pieces	يرتب قطع الشطرنج
do > homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب	sleep > in a chair	ينام على كرسي

### التعبيرات اللغوية

### Prepositions

at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	look for	يبحث عن
charge ... with	يشحن ... بـ	on a laptop/ a computer/ a mobile phone	على اللاب توب/ الكمبيوتر/ الهاتف المحمول

### حروف الجر

#### Check Point

### Choose and complete:

#### MP3 player – for – tap – use

- 1 I can't find my pen. Will you help me look ..... it?
- 2 Most people ..... technology nowadays.
- 3 I listen to music on my .....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية و حروف الجر.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
send	يرسل	sent	sent

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
new	جديد	old	قديم
online	عبر الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
sleep	ينام	wake up	يستيقظ

## Language Notes

### 1 Would you like to + inf. ....?

هل تود أن/هل تريد أن ... ؟  
أنا أود أن

I'd (would) like to + inf.

- Would you like to use a 3D printer?
- I'd like to take a selfie.

### 2

الاسم المركب من كلمتين عند جمعه نجعل الكلمة الثانية فقط.

- laptop computers / mobile phones.

### 3 Prepositions of place:

حروف جر المكان:



next to بجانب/بجوار behind خلف in front of أمام under تحت near بالقرب من

### 4 An MP3 player

لاحظ استخدام an مع كلمة MP3 player لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك حيث إن حرف (M) ينطق (em)

- There's an MP3 player on the desk.

### 5 one of + (اسم جمع) + فعل مفرد

واحد من .....

- One of my friends likes computer studies.

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



## Definitions

A printer	الطابعة	a <b>machine</b> <sup>(1)</sup> which is <b>connected to</b> <sup>(2)</sup> a computer and can <b>make copies</b> <sup>(3)</sup> of information
An MP3 player	مشغل إم بي ثري	a machine or a computer <b>program</b> <sup>(4)</sup> that plays music
A blog	مدونة	is an <b>online</b> <sup>(5)</sup> diary.

## التعريفات

- (1) آلة
- (2) متصلة بـ
- (3) تنسخ
- (4) برنامج
- (5) عبر الإنترنت

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
send	يرسل	post	يرسل بالبريد/ ينشر
small	صغير	tiny	صغير جداً

## الكلمات ومرادفها

## Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
charge (v)	يشحن	-er		تحول الفعل لاسم	charger (n)	شاحن
print (v)	يطبع				printer (n)	الطابعة

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
tap	يضغط	tape	شريط
click	ينقر	clock	ساعة حائط
mouse	فأرة	mouth	فم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.



## Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 One of my sisters ..... in primary school.  
 a) are                      b) is                      c) has                      d) have
- 2 To get the noun from the verb "print", add the suffix ".....".  
 a) -er                      b) -or                      c) -ment                      d) -ness




## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 1

#### Pre-reading question:

- What forms of technology do you use at school?

 **Read Ziad's description of his classroom. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.**

*SB pages 34 & 35*



- (1) الأجهزة اللوحية
- (2) أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمول
- (3) فأرة
- (4) طابعة
- (5) يطبع
- (6) هاتف محمول
- (7) يشحن
- (8) شاحن الهاتف
- (9) مشغل أغاني

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets<sup>(1)</sup> in school. There are two laptop computers<sup>(2)</sup> in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse<sup>(3)</sup>. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer<sup>(4)</sup>, too. My friend, Omar, is printing<sup>(5)</sup> his homework.

I have got a mobile phone<sup>(6)</sup> but it's in my bag – we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging<sup>(7)</sup> his phone with a phone charger<sup>(8)</sup>. And he's got a new MP3 player<sup>(9)</sup>, it's small and blue. Can you see it?

#### Post-reading question: Choose:

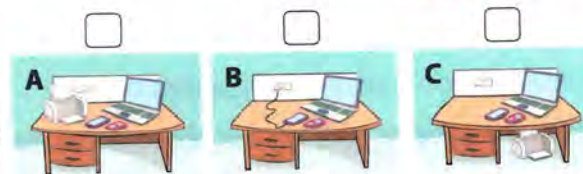
- The text is about using ..... in the classroom.

- a) mobile phones      b) technology      c) nature      d) sports

 **Listen to the description of the classroom. Tick (✓) the correct picture.**

*SB page 35*

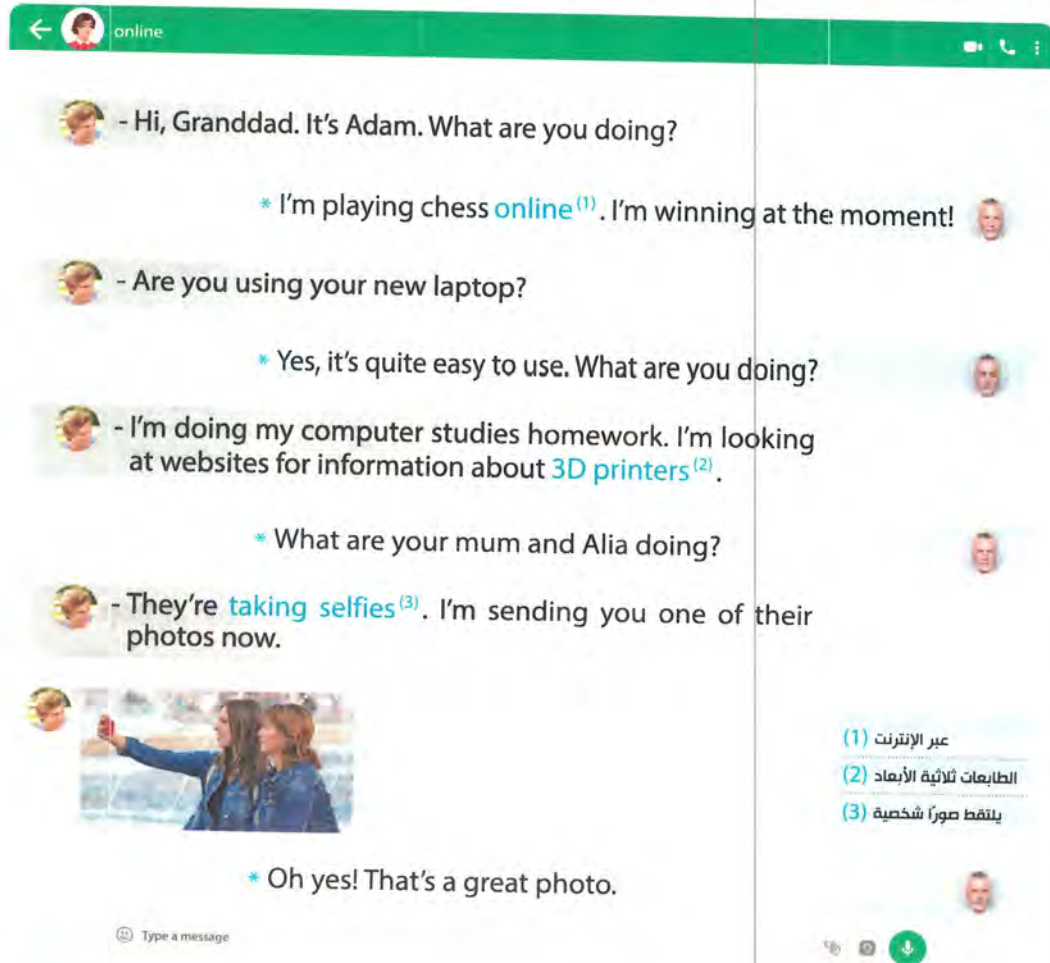
There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player, but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.




## Pre-reading question:


- What is your father doing now?


 Read the text message conversation. What is in this photo? **SB page 36**





← online


 - Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?


 \* I'm playing chess **online**<sup>(1)</sup>. I'm winning at the moment!


 - Are you using your new laptop?


 \* Yes, it's quite easy to use. What are you doing?

 - I'm doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about **3D printers**<sup>(2)</sup>.

 \* What are your mum and Alia doing?

 - They're **taking selfies**<sup>(3)</sup>. I'm sending you one of their photos now.



 \* Oh yes! That's a great photo.

Type a message

(1) عبر الإنترنت

(2) الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد

(3) يلتقط صوراً شخصية

 **Note:**

website /websaɪt/  
information /ɪnfə'meɪʃən/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

**Post-reading questions:**

- 1 What game is granddad playing online?
- 2 Where is Adam looking for information about 3D printers?



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought a new MP3 ..... to play music. القبوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) computer                      b) player                      c) speaker                      d) printer
2. I use the ..... to recharge my mobile phone. المنومة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) earphone                      b) tablet                      c) charger                      d) mouse
3. You can use the ..... to click on different icons on the computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) mouse                      b) printer                      c) charger                      d) mouth
4. I ..... on the icon many times, but the mobile didn't work. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) clicked                      b) tapped                      c) rung                      d) knocked
5. I'd like to ..... a selfie in front of the river. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
 a) make                      b) take                      c) tap                      d) click
6. We use our ..... in the classroom to learn.  
 a) chargers                      b) tablets                      c) players                      d) phones
7. A/An ..... is a kind of computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) white board                      b) charger                      c) MP3 player                      d) laptop
8. I like ..... models. This is a model plane.  
 a) sending                      b) writing                      c) making                      d) doing
9. The whiteboard is ..... the teacher.  
 a) between                      b) next                      c) behind                      d) in front
10. I like to play games ..... my mobile phone.  
 a) in                      b) on                      c) at                      d) for
11. The book is full of useful .....  
 a) design                      b) white board                      c) information                      d) printer
12. To know some information about animals, ..... at this website.  
 a) look                      b) click                      c) tap                      d) write
13. A blog is a/an online ..... WB  
 a) diary                      b) dairy                      c) day                      d) date

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you ..... me a text message when you arrive?  
a) take                      b) send                      c) play                      d) do  
الجزء ٢٠٢٣
2. There is a keyboard ..... to the laptop.  
a) far                      b) in front                      c) next                      d) under  
المجموعة ٢٠٢٢
3. My brother likes to ..... computer studies.  
a) make                      b) use                      c) send                      d) do
4. He ..... his mobile to talk to his friends.  
a) makes                      b) smiles                      c) uses                      d) sends
5. Computers and mobiles are examples of .....  
a) food                      b) technology                      c) subjects                      d) hobbies  
السرفه ٢٠٢٢
6. He's charging his phone ..... a phone charger.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) with                      d) by
7. We can ..... a video call with our cousins in England.  
a) make                      b) take                      c) see                      d) send  
الجزء ٢٠٢٣
8. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know.  
a) receive                      b) make                      c) send                      d) play  
WB
9. .... the icon on your computer.  
a) Give                      b) Fill                      c) Click                      d) Play  
الجزء ٢٠٢٣
10. I looked ..... my watch everywhere, but I didn't find it.  
a) after                      b) at                      c) for                      d) up
11. Marwan likes playing games ..... He is on the internet every day.  
a) online                      b) offline                      c) line                      d) outline  
الجزء ٢٠٢٣
12. There is a mouse ..... the laptop on the teacher's desk.  
a) far                      b) in front                      c) next                      d) near  
WB

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

## C Language

1 There is: يوجد للمفرد

There are: يوجد للجمع

There is + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد + ...

- There is a printer.
- There is some water.

**Affirmative**

There are + اسم جمع + ...

- There are two laptops.
- There are some boys here.

There isn't + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد + ...

- There isn't a printer.
- There isn't any water.

**Negative**

There aren't + اسم جمع + ...

- There aren't any laptops.
- There aren't any boys here.

Is there + اسم مفرد (يعد) / اسم لا يعد + ...?

- Is there a printer?
- Is there any water?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

**Yes/No questions**

Are there + اسم جمع + ...?

- Are there any laptops?
- Are there any boys here?

Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.



**Remember**

**some & any**

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض (في الجملة المثبتة)، ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are **some** apples in this dish.

- There is **some** rice in this dish.

- يمكن استخدامها أيضا في العرض والطلب:

- Would you like **some** tea?

(عرض)

- Can I have **some** books?

(طلب)

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى أي (في الجملة المنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل)، ويأتي بعدها اسم يعد (جمع) أو اسم لا يعد:

- There **aren't** any tablets in my classroom.

- Is there **any** juice in the bottle?



**Got it ?**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1 There are any notebooks in your bag?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are there) لوجود علامة استفهام (صيغة سؤال).

2 There are any oranges on the tree.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (some) لأن الجملة مثبتة.

## Usage الاستخدام

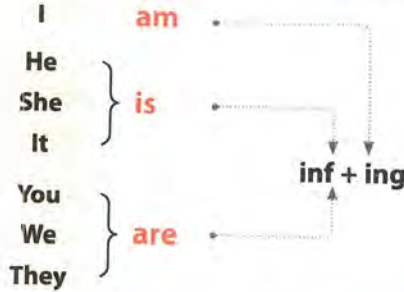
We use the present continuous to talk about things that are **happening now**.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن شيء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

She **is writing** a letter **at the moment**.

I **am reading** a story **now**.

## Form التكوين



I **am playing** football.

He **is reading** a book.

They **are swimming**.

## Key words الكلمات الدالة

ما زال **still** - احترس! **Watch out!** - أنصت **Listen!** - انظر **Look!** - الآن **now**  
 في الوقت الحاضر **at present** - في هذه اللحظة **at the moment**

- My grandfather **is using** his laptop **now**.
- My uncle **is watching** TV **at the moment**.

## لاحظ

عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفاعل:

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing): (take - taking) - (come - coming)
- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، غالباً ما نضع الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing): (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ثم نضع (ying): (die - dying) - (lie - lying)

## Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- Ramy study English at the moment. (.....)  
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (is studying) لوجود الدالة (at the moment) على المضارع المستمر.
- Watch out! A car comes. (.....)  
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (is coming) لوجود (Watch out!) الدالة على المضارع المستمر.
- I can't go out. I do my homework. (.....)  
 - الإجابة الصحيحة (am doing) لأنه لا يستطيع الخروج الآن، أي زمن فعل الواجب مضارع مستمر.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's ..... cheese in the fridge. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) any                      b) some                      c) a lot                      d) many
2. I'm very thirsty. Can I have ..... cold water, please?  
 a) many                      b) a lot                      c) some                      d) any
3. There ..... a printer above the table.  
 a) is                              b) are                              c) has                              d) have
4. Are there ..... tablets? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) some                      b) a                              c) any                              d) a lot
5. There isn't an MP3 player, but there ..... two mobile phones.  
 a) are                              b) aren't                              c) is                              d) isn't
6. .... any juice in the bottle?  
 a) Is there                      b) Are there                      c) There is                      d) There are
7. There ..... any notebooks in my bag. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
 a) is                              b) isn't                              c) are                              d) aren't
8. There aren't ..... boys in the class. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) some                      b) any                              c) no                              d) much
9. There isn't ..... meat on the table.  
 a) a                              b) a lot                              c) some                              d) any
10. .... any girls in your class?  
 a) There is                      b) Is there                              c) There are                      d) Are there

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There aren't some eggs in the fridge. (.....) دمياط ٢٠٢٢
2. **A:** Is there any milk in the bottle? **B:** No, there is. (.....)
3. Is there any figs in the fridge? (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
4. We don't have some books on the shelves. (.....) الحيرة ٢٠٢٣
5. There aren't any rice in the dish. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
6. Can I have any juice, please? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They ..... at websites for information now.
  - are looking
  - looking
  - looked
  - look
- Look! Adel ..... in the garden.
  - works
  - are working
  - is working
  - work
- My sisters are ..... the dishes at the moment.
  - wash
  - washes
  - washing
  - washed
- The boys ..... in the playground now.
  - play
  - played
  - are playing
  - playing
- My friend ..... his homework now.
  - printed
  - is printing
  - printing
  - prints
- Mum and my sister ..... a cake at the moment.
  - is baking
  - are baking
  - bakes
  - baked
- Basmala ..... sleeping now.
  - can
  - does
  - is
  - has
- Some kids ..... noise inside the class.
  - is making
  - makes
  - making
  - are making
- ..... is cleaning the house at the moment.
  - Mayada
  - Mayada and her mum
  - We
  - I

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- She is watches a nice programme now. (.....)
- Ahmed is played chess online. (.....)
- I drink tea at the moment. (.....)
- Ali and Kamal is riding their bikes. (.....)
- Listen! She sings beautifully. (.....)
- My little sister aren't doing her homework at the moment. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### How to write a description of your classroom.

كيفية كتابة وصف عن حجرتك الدراسية.

- My name's (الاسم).
- We often use (اسم الجهاز) in school.
- There are (العدد) tablet computers in the classroom.
- There aren't any (اسم الجهاز).
- There's a printer, too.
- We use it to print our homework.
- I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school.

#### Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

- استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

#### Example

##### Classroom objects

My name's Samy. Our life is going fast now because of technology. Technology helps us get information easily. We often use tablets in school. There are four tablet computers in the classroom. We use them to look for information on the internet. There aren't any laptops. There's a printer, too. We use it to print our homework. There is a board. The teacher always explains the lessons on it. I've got a mobile phone, but I don't use it at school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your classroom"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهايه الكتاب

1. What do you love?
  - a) Park.
  - b) Break.
  - c) Nature.
  - d) Technology.
2. What is your favourite hobby?
  - a) Playing video games.
  - b) Watching TV.
  - c) Playing football.
  - d) Reading.
3. How often do you play on your laptop?
  - a) Often.
  - b) Always.
  - c) Usually.
  - d) Never.
4. How often do you play on your mobile phone?
  - a) Usually.
  - b) Always.
  - c) Never.
  - d) Sometimes.

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A ..... is a photo you take for yourself.
  - a) door
  - b) printer
  - c) selfie
  - d) castle

العربية ٢٠٢٢
2. My computer ..... makes a loud click.
  - a) mouse
  - b) printer
  - c) charger
  - d) tablet
3. Young people use the ..... to listen to music.
  - a) charger
  - b) MP3 player
  - c) printer
  - d) mouse

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. You can ..... on the icon and find information.
  - a) tap
  - b) tape
  - c) try
  - d) look

فنا ٢٠٢٣
5. Mr. Osama is ..... his phone with a phone charger.
  - a) wearing
  - b) killing
  - c) breaking
  - d) charging

المنومية ٢٠٢٣
6. We usually use mobile phones to send ..... messages.
  - a) test
  - b) taste
  - c) text
  - d) taxi

القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
7. There is a phone charger ..... of the printer.
  - a) next
  - b) behind
  - c) in front
  - d) under

الضوم ٢٠٢٢
8. My sister ..... me with my homework at the moment.
  - a) helps
  - b) helping
  - c) helped
  - d) is helping

9. .... a lot of supermarkets in your city?

a) Is there

b) There is

c) There are

d) Are there

10. There aren't ..... trees in front of my house.

a) any

b) some

c) a

d) a lot

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Manal having lunch with her family now. (.....)

2. There isn't some sugar in my tea. (.....)

3. I'm play chess online now. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

4. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"Technology you use in the classroom"**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 If you ..... an icon for "take a selfie", what will it look like?

a) design

b) tap

c) click

d) do

2 There are two ..... in the classroom.

a) laptop computer

b) laptops computers

c) laptops computer

d) laptop computers

3 My brother studies at ..... university in the USA.

a) an

b) some

c) a

d) much



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

dancer (n)	راقصة	programme (n)
dictionary (n)	قاموس	school uniform (n)
nature (n)	الطبيعة	wave (d) (v)

### المفردات الرئيسية

برنامج  
زي مدرسي  
يلوح بيده

### Additional Vocabulary

break time (n)	وقت الفسحة	puzzle (n)
drop (ped) (v)	يسقط	stay (ed) (v)

### المفردات الإضافية

لغز  
يقف/يقوم/يظل

### Language Expressions

bring > a drink	يحضر مشروبنا	go > outside
do > a hobby	يؤدي هواية	have > a hobby
talk to > a friend	يتحدث مع صديق	mime > an action
give > advice	يعطي نصيحة	take > notes

### التعبيرات اللغوية

يذهب للخارج  
لديه هواية  
يمثل حدثاً  
يسجل ملاحظات

### Prepositions

at break/lunchtime	في الفسحة/وقت الغداء	put my hand up
on an MP3 player	على مشغل الموسيقى	smile at
programme on	البرنامج يعرض	write with

### حروف الجر

أرفع يدي لأعلى  
يبتسم لـ  
يكتب باستخدام

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **programme - at - stay - wave**

- 1 A: What's your favourite TV .....? B: Wicked Tuna.
- 2 Smile ..... the camera to get a good photo.
- 3 We don't ..... in class during the break.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
different	مختلف	similar/same	مشابه
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	leave	يفادر
hot	حار	cold	بارد

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



### 1 like/don't like + being

يحب/يحب ألا يكون .....

- I **like being** in the garden.
- I **don't like being** in the house.

### 2 use + المفعول + to + inf. / for + v +ing

يستخدم .....

- Hala is **using** her mobile phone **to make/ for making** a video call.

### 3 need + (n) يحتاج / need to + (inf.) يحتاج إلى أن

- I **need some water**, please.
- I **need to drink** some water, please.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
hot	حار	warm	دافئ
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	remain	يبقى/يظل

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يتصرف	-ion	تحول الفعل لإسم	action (n) عمل/تصرف
dance (v)	يرقص	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	dancer (n) راقصة

## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-listening question:** - What are your brothers/sisters doing now?

Lesson 3

 Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What's Randa doing?

SB page 38

**Randa** Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

**Sherifa** Oh, hello Randa! Where are you? Are you at home?

**Randa** Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

**Sherifa** What's mum doing?

**Randa** She's looking at a website. She wants to make a cake.

**Sherifa** Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?

**Randa** No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

**Sherifa** Is grandmother watching TV?

**Randa** Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme<sup>(1)</sup> on now.

**Sherifa** Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing?

**Randa** They're taking selfies in the garden.

**Sherifa** Again? They are always taking selfies!

**Randa** I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she is listening to music on her Mp3 player.

**Sherifa** She's a good dancer<sup>(2)</sup>! What are you doing, Randa?

**Randa** I am talking to you!

**Sherifa** Oh yes!



(1) برنامج

(2) راقصة

### Post-listening questions:

- 1 Do you think they are enjoying their time? Why?
- 2 If you were Sherifa, would you return home quickly to be with your family?

**Pre-listening question:** - What do you like to do when you have free time?

 **Read the conversation between Leila and Judy. Correct the mistakes.**

**Listen and check your answers.**

*WB page 97*

**Judy** Hi, Leila. Where are you?

**Leila** Hi, Judy. I'm **in** the park with my family.

**Judy** What **are** you doing there?

**Leila** I'm **sitting** under a tree. It's very sunny.

**Judy** **Are** your brothers sitting, too?

**Leila** No, they aren't. They're playing football.

**Judy** Is your dad **playing** football with them?

**Leila** No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

**Judy** What's your mother doing?

**Leila** Er, wait... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!



**Post-listening question:**

- Do you think Leila will feel sad because her father isn't with them?

**Pre-reading question:**

- What are you doing now?

 **Read the puzzle. Match the numbers with the people.**

**Lesson 3**

*SB Page 39*

Soha is not making a video call, but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology. Fatma has got long, curly hair. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

**Post-reading question:**

- In which room are the girls sitting?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Do you like using new technology? Why/ Why not?

**Read about Wael and Mazin. Who has got a laptop?**

I love **technology**<sup>(1)</sup>! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess my favourite lesson at school? Yes, it's Computer Studies! At break and **lunchtime**<sup>(2)</sup>, I **stay**<sup>(3)</sup> in the classroom and I look at video game websites on my phone.

**Wael, age 12**

I love **nature**<sup>(4)</sup>. I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and **insects**<sup>(5)</sup> all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!

I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

**Mazin, age 13****Post-reading questions:**

- 1 What does Mazin like?
- 2 Is it good to have a hobby that you do all the time? Why/ Why not?

**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:  
insect /Insekt/

(1) التكنولوجيا

(2) وقت الغداء

(3) يبقى/يقوم

(4) الطبيعة

(5) حشرات

**Life Skills**

1. What do you think of Wael and Mazin?

.....

2. Who do you think needs help?

.....

3. What advice can you give him?

.....





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love ..... I like watching trees, animals and flowers. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) technology      b) games      c) nature      d) sport
2. Pupils should wear their school ..... at school. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) uniforms      b) forms      c) reforms      d) performs
3. Never ..... to your friend during lessons.  
 a) talk      b) take      c) use      d) make
4. We can use a ..... if we don't know the meaning of a word.  
 a) puzzle      b) diary      c) dictionary      d) notebook
5. I'll go to the kitchen and ..... a drink to my grandmother.  
 a) do      b) mime      c) watch      d) bring
6. The boy went on the bus and ..... to his mother.  
 a) waved      b) stayed      c) moved      d) dropped
7. I like to write ..... that pen. It's really good.  
 a) in      b) for      c) to      d) with
8. If I want to ask my teacher, I ..... my hand up.  
 a) fly      b) wave      c) put      d) drop
9. My little sister always ..... water on the floor.  
 a) drops      b) writes      c) gives      d) brings
10. **A:** How long did you ..... in Alexandria? **B:** Two weeks.  
 a) stay      b) say      c) leave      d) visit
11. We usually have our sandwiches ..... break.  
 a) by      b) at      c) in      d) with
12. It's usually ..... in summer.  
 a) dark      b) cold      c) sunny      d) cool

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father is a firefighter. He always wears his ..... at work. الفيلوية ٢٠٢٠
  - a) rule
  - b) uniform
  - c) form
  - d) picture
2. I always listen to songs ..... my MP3 player.
  - a) in
  - b) on
  - c) by
  - d) with
3. Our teacher always smiles ..... us. He's friendly.
  - a) with
  - b) of
  - c) at
  - d) about
4. I ..... many hobbies on holidays.
  - a) bring
  - b) take
  - c) make
  - d) do
5. I usually ..... notes during the lesson.
  - a) take
  - b) help
  - c) do
  - d) bring
6. I like doing ..... . They make me think.
  - a) toys
  - b) bikes
  - c) kites
  - d) puzzles
7. Mum ..... the best cakes.
  - a) designs
  - b) takes
  - c) makes
  - d) does
8. It's her favourite programme ..... now.
  - a) on
  - b) in
  - c) with
  - d) by
9. I like playing video games on my ..... .
  - a) kite
  - b) MP3 player
  - c) laptop
  - d) dictionary
10. Students should learn how to use their ..... in English classes.
  - a) hobbies
  - b) posters
  - c) puzzles
  - d) dictionaries
11. I use my phone ..... send text messages to my friends.
  - a) to
  - b) for
  - c) by
  - d) at
12. I always ..... advice to my little brother. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣
  - a) get
  - b) bring
  - c) take
  - d) give

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## C Language

### The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

#### Negative النفي

I	am not	} is not (isn't)	inf + ing	• I am not playing football.	
He					
She					• He is not (isn't) reading a book.
It		} are not (aren't)	inf + ing		
You					
We					• They are not (aren't) swimming.
They					

#### Question السؤال

Yes/No questions	Am	} subj. الفاعل	→ inf. + ing ...?
	Is		
	Are		
	• A: Are you studying French?		
	- B: Yes, I am.		- B: No, I am not.

Wh-questions	Q. Word +	} subj. الفاعل	→ inf. + ing ...?
	am		
	is		
	• A: What are you doing?		- B: I'm helping my father.

#### Got it ?

#### Read and correct the underlined words:

- A: You are taking a selfie? B: No, I am writing an email. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (Are you) لأنها صيغة سؤال لوجود علامة استفهام.
- Why is Sara cry? (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (crying) لأن is يتبعها فعل مضاف إليه (ing).
- He doesn't sending a text message. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't) لأن الفعل sending آخره (ing).



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... taking a photo?
  - a) She is
  - b) Is she
  - c) She has
  - d) Has she

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
2. **A:** Is she watching TV? **B:** No, she .....
  - a) is
  - b) isn't
  - c) does
  - d) doesn't

الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
3. She is not ..... a video call, but she is talking to her friend.
  - a) making
  - b) makes
  - c) make
  - d) to make

المنيا ٢٠٢٣
4. Be quiet! Your little brother .....
  - a) sleeps
  - b) sleep
  - c) is sleeping
  - d) has slept

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. Sally ..... her homework at the moment. She is cooking.
  - a) doesn't do
  - b) does
  - c) is doing
  - d) isn't doing

بنها سويف، ٢٠٢٢
6. We ..... watching TV, but we are making lunch.
  - a) don't
  - b) haven't
  - c) aren't
  - d) isn't
7. What is John ..... at the moment?
  - a) do
  - b) doing
  - c) does
  - d) did

المنيا ٢٠٢٣
8. **A:** Are you wearing brown shoes? **B:** Yes, I .....
  - a) am
  - b) is
  - c) are
  - d) was

المنيا ٢٠٢٣
9. **A:** Is Tamer working at the moment? **B:** No, he ..... washing his car.
  - a) doesn't
  - b) does
  - c) is
  - d) isn't
10. What ..... your friends doing at the moments?
  - a) do
  - b) have
  - c) are
  - d) is

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He isn't study his lessons now. (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
2. Does your brother sleeping now? (.....) القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
3. He is writing emails at the moment? (.....)
4. What games do you playing online? (.....) منيا ٢٠٢٣
5. **A:** Are you eating? **B:** Yes, I do. (.....)
6. What are the girls does now? (.....) البحيرة ٢٠٢٣

## D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



### 1. Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your friend.

السؤال والإجابة عن صديقك.

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
Are you sitting next to your best friend?	هل تجلسين بجوار صديقتك المفضلة؟	Yes, I am.	نعم.
Is she wearing black shoes?	هل هي ترتدي حذاء أسود؟	No, she isn't.	لا.
What are your friends doing?	ماذا يفعل أصدقاؤك؟	They are watching TV.	إنهم يشاهدون التلفاز.

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► **Judy is talking to Leila on the phone.**

**Judy** : Hi, Leila. Where are you?

**Leila** : Hi, Judy. (1).....

**Judy** : The park! (2).....?

**Leila** : I'm sitting under a tree in the park. It's very sunny.

**Judy** : Are your brothers sitting, too?

**Leila** : (3)..... . They are playing football.

**Judy** : (4).....?

**Leila** : No, my father isn't sitting with us. He's working today.

**Judy** : What is your mother doing?

**Leila** : (5).....



## 2. Write it right

### 1. How to write about what your family are doing now.

كيفية الكتابة عما تفعله عائلتك الآن.

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- My father is (الوظيفة).
- I have got (العدد) brothers and (العدد) sisters.
- My mother is (ما تقوم به). My father is (ما يقوم به).

#### Writing tips

Try reading your paragraph out loud to make sure it makes sense.

- حاول قراءة فقرتك بصوت عالٍ لتتأكد أن لها معنى.

### Example

#### What your family are doing now

My name's Amal. I live in Cairo. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. I have got two brothers and no sisters. I am in preparatory one. My brothers go to primary school. We are a happy family. All of us are busy now. My mother is in the kitchen. She is cooking dinner. She is a good cook. Her food is delicious. My father is watching TV. He's watching a football match at the moment. My brothers are playing video games. I am doing computer studies. It's my favourite subject. We are waiting for our dinner. We are very hungry now.

### 2. How to write about staying safe when you use technology.

كيفية الكتابة عن بقاءك آمناً عندما تستخدم التكنولوجيا.

### Example

#### How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We all use the internet every day. It is easy to use the internet. But when we are online, we need to be more careful. We need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information, like your telephone number. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell your parents or your teacher.

**1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

I am Sameer and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer, too. My friend Hady is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone but it is in my bag. We don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Hamdy has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player. It's small and brown. Can you see it?

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the best title for this text?  
.....
2. Do you think it is important to use computers at school? Why/ Why not?  
.....
3. What are the means of technology mentioned in the passage?  
.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
a) MP3 player    b) printer    c) mobile    d) charger
5. Hamdy is .....  
a) a teacher    b) a student    c) a classmate    d) Hady's friend
6. You can listen to music using a/an .....  
a) printer    b) MP3 player    c) mouse    d) picture

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I always eat salad ..... lunchtime.  
a) on    b) at    c) of    d) to
2. I like watching trees and birds. I like .....  
a) water    b) hobbies    c) sports    d) nature
3. This ..... gives me a lot of information about animals.  
a) screen    b) website  
c) mouse    d) charger
4. The teacher always ..... us some advice at the end of the lesson.  
a) gives    b) follows    c) takes    d) makes

5. Don't ..... litter in the river. We drink from it.  
 a) follow                      b) drop                      c) take                      d) mime
6. At break, students shouldn't ..... in the class.  
 a) use                      b) bring                      c) stay                      d) leave
7. It is always very ..... in summer.  
 a. hot                      b) cold                      c) rainy                      d) snowy
8. Manal's father is not ..... today.  
 a) works                      b) working                      c) work                      d) worked
9. They aren't sleeping, but they ..... their tablets.  
 a) use                      b) using                      c) are using                      d) aren't using
10. What's your mother .....?  
 a) doing                      b) do                      c) did                      d) does

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. No, they are watching TV. They're playing football. (.....)
2. What are you read online? (.....)
3. My dad is at home. He is working today. (.....)
4. Sally is playing chess online? (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"What your family are doing now"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 Everyone should ..... a hobby to do.  
 a) do                      b) have                      c) make                      d) give
- 2 Sally ..... her tablet and sending photos to her friends.  
 a) uses                      b) using                      c) used                      d) is using
- 3 They ..... taking selfies.  
 a) always have                      b) have always                      c) are always                      d) always are





## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	password (n)	كلمة المرور/السر
colourful (adj)	زاهى اللون/ملون	personal information	معلومات شخصية
instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	tea bag (n)	كيس شاي
kettle (n)	غلاية	telephone number	رقم التليفون

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Language Expressions

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
answer > a call	يرد على مكالمة	make > friends with	يكون صداقة مع
come > home	يأتى إلى البيت	tea	يعمل شاي
keep > secret	يحافظ على سرية	say > hello	يقول أهلاً
look > interesting	يبدو شيئاً	stay > safe	يبقى آمناً

### التعبيرات اللغوية

### Prepositions

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
a cup of tea	فنجان شاي	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكتروني
agree with	يتفق مع	take out	يخرج
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	turn on	يشغل (جهاز)
example of	مثال لـ	worried about	قلق على

### حروف الجر

### Check Point Choose and complete:

stay - to - colourful - for

- Girls like to wear ..... clothes.
- I usually ask my teacher ..... help .
- It's important to ..... safe online

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

### Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
drink يشرب	drank	drunk
keep يحافظ على	kept	kept

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق
popular	محبوب/شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
worried	قلق	calm	هادئ

## الكلمات وعكسها

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



### 1 stop + v + ing

- Stop **playing** on your phone and listen to me.

يتوقف عن فعل شيء

### 2 Why don't you + inf. ....?

- Why don't you **use** an MP3 player?

لم لا.....؟ (تستخدم لتقديم الاقتراح).

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



### Definitions

password	كلمة السر	a word or numbers you use to go onto a website
secret	سر	<b>something</b> <sup>(1)</sup> you do not want to <b>tell</b> <sup>(2)</sup> people about

### التعريفات

(1) شيء ما

(2) يخبر

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل
popular	محبوب/ شائع	famous	مشهور

## الكلمات ومرادفها

### Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n)	لون	-ful		تحول الاسم لصفة		colourful (adj)	ملون
person (n)	شخص	-al				personal (adj)	شخصي

## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-reading question:** - Are you good at using technology?

**Lesson 5**

**Read the instructions and put the pictures in the correct order.**

**SB page 41**



### How to send a text message:

- First, tap the messages icon.
- Write your text message.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Then tap the SEND icon.

### 2. Complete the text:

#### How to make a video call:

- Turn your tablet on.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!



**Post-reading question:** - How can you send an email?

**Lesson 6**

**Work in pairs. Complete the table with this advice. Can you add any sentences?**

**SB page 42**

### Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep <sup>(1)</sup> your password <sup>(2)</sup> secret <sup>(3)</sup>.
- Make friends with people you don't know online.
- Tell people your personal information <sup>(4)</sup> (e.g. telephone number <sup>(5)</sup>).
- Send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a parent or teacher.
- Answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something.



(1) حافظ على

(2) كلمة المرور

(3) سر

(4) معلومات شخصية

(5) رقم الهاتف

#### Do (✓)

- Keep your password secret.

.....  
.....

#### Don't (x)

- Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

.....  
.....



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to stay ..... online. بني بنويف، ٢٠٢٢  
 a) safe                                      b) worried                                      c) angry                                      d) save
2. "....." is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website. الدقهلية، ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Keyword                                      b) Crossword                                      c) Password                                      d) Secret
3. Write the ..... for how to make a cup of tea. بور سعيد، ٢٠٢٢  
 a) information                                      b) messages                                      c) icons                                      d) instructions
4. Don't ..... a phone call from someone you don't know. الغربية، ٢٠٢٢  
 a) ask                                      b) reply                                      c) answer                                      d) write
5. To make a video call, ..... your tablet on.  
 a) turn                                      b) look                                      c) come                                      d) keep
6. We use the ..... to make water hot. الفيوم، ٢٠٢٢  
 a) cattle                                      b) kite                                      c) can                                      d) kettle
7. Please keep it ..... . I don't want anyone to know about my plan. القاهرة، ٢٠٢٣  
 a) secret                                      b) secretary                                      c) quite                                      d) away
8. Don't tell anyone about your ..... information on the internet. دمياط، ٢٠٢٣  
 a) personally                                      b) personality                                      c) personal                                      d) person
9. Children shouldn't make friends ..... people they don't know.  
 a) for                                      b) with                                      c) at                                      d) of
10. If you have a problem, ..... for help from a parent or teacher.  
 a) ask                                      b) say                                      c) stay                                      d) keep
11. My mother is always worried ..... me when I'm late outside.  
 a) on                                      b) at                                      c) for                                      d) about
12. We ..... water when we want to make tea.  
 a) stay                                      b) say                                      c) boil                                      d) answer
13. Most children like to wear ..... clothes.  
 a) bad                                      b) unpopular                                      c) dangerous                                      d) colourful

## C Language

### Imperative

صيغة الأمر

#### Affirmative الإثبات

- تبدأ صيغة الأمر في الإثبات بالفعل في المصدر أو **Always + inf.** بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- **Go** to the shop.
- **Open** the door, please. / Please, **open** the door.
- **Always follow** school rules.
- Nelly, **tidy** your room, please.

#### Negative النفي

- وتبدأ صيغة الأمر في النفي بـ (**Don't / Never + inf.**) ثم الفعل في المصدر بدون الفاعل. ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

- **Don't go** to the shop.
- **Don't open** the door, please. / Please, **don't open** the door.
- **Never come** to school late.
- **Don't speak** loudly, Omar.

#### Got it ?

#### Read and correct the underlined words:

1 Following your school rules, Basmala. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Follow**) لأنها صيغة أمر و هي تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

2 Didn't talk during the lesson. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**Don't**) لأنها صيغة أمر منفي.

3 Ali, brings some water, please. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (**bring**) لأن **Ali** هنا مخاطب، وبعدها فعل أمر يبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.

# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... on your tablet to make a video call. المشرفة ٢٠٢٣  
a) Turns                      b) Turn                      c) Turning                      d) Turned
- ..... shout. My father is asleep. الجزيرة ٢٠٢٣  
a) Don't                      b) Not                      c) Do                      d) Often
- To send a text message, ..... the SEND icon. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
a) tap                      b) tapping                      c) tapped                      d) to tap
- ..... photos to people you don't know.  
a) Send                      b) Don't send                      c) Didn't send                      d) Sending
- Lara, ..... your password secret.  
a) kept                      b) keeping                      c) keep                      d) keeps
- Use technology and ..... safe online.  
a) to stay                      b) staying                      c) stayed                      d) stay
- Don't ..... a phone call from someone you don't know.  
a) answer                      b) answering                      c) answers                      d) answered
- ..... a few minutes preparing yourself for exercises. القرية ٢٠٢٢  
a) Spends                      b) Spend                      c) Spending                      d) Spent
- First, ..... some water in a kettle.  
a) putting                      b) to putting                      c) to put                      d) put
- ..... write on your desk, keep it clean.  
a) Didn't                      b) Doesn't                      c) Never                      d) Can't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- Don't eating when you use a computer. (.....) القلوبية ٢٠٢٣
- Taking out the tea bag. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
- Boils the water, Nada. (.....) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
- Tamer! Didn't leave your toys here. (.....)
- Make noise in the library. (.....) الفاخرة ٢٠٢٣
- Don't been rude to other people. (.....)



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sherief is asking Lamiaa about Reem, Sara and Aya.

**Sherief** : What are Reem and Sara doing?

**Lamiaa** : (1).....

**Sherief** : Again! They are always taking selfies. (2).....?

**Lamiaa** : Aya is listening to her MP3 player.

**Sherief** : Do you like taking selfies, Lamiaa?

**Lamiaa** : (3).....

**Sherief** : (4).....?

**Lamiaa** : Because my phone camera isn't good.

**Sherief** : Can we take a selfie together with my phone?

**Lamiaa** : (5).....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, ..... the TV on to watch the new film.

- a) make                      b) keep                      c) turn                      d) stay

2. You should keep your ..... secret.

- a) sport                      b) food  
c) friends                      d) password

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

3. It is good to ..... new friends.

- a) make                      b) do                      c) stay                      d) spend

4. Our English book ..... interesting, so lots of people use it.

- a) takes                      b) makes                      c) looks                      d) asks

5. Stay safe when you use .....

- a) puzzle                      b) password                      c) technology                      d) secret

6. We use the kettle to ..... water.

- a) keep                      b) stay                      c) look                      d) boil

7. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know.

- a) talk                      b) write                      c) send                      d) click

الجامعة ٢٠٢٣

8. He ..... a story now.

- a) read                      b) reads                      c) has read                      d) is reading

الجامعة ٢٠٢٣

9. Look! the car is ..... very fast.

- a) moves                      b) moving                      c) move                      d) moved

التحيرة ٢٠٢٢

10. .... your hands before eating.

- a) Wash                      b) Washing                      c) To wash                      d) Washed

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Do your parents sitting under the tree? (.....)

2. There are some juice in the bottle. (.....)

3. Don't to use your phone in class. (.....)

4. Sally, writes your name on your book. (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**"How to stay safe online"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- 1 When the mobile rings, I like to ..... the call.  
a) send                      b) write                      c) answer                      d) make
- 2 Stay safe ..... you use technology.  
a) when                      b) which                      c) how                      d) why
- 3 Toka, ..... come to school late.  
a) doesn't                      b) don't                      c) isn't                      d) can't



## Skills

Ask and answer questions about your friend:

- A: Are you sitting next to your best friend?
- B: Yes, I am.
- A: Is she writing with a pen or pencil?
- B: She is writing with a pencil.
- A: What are they doing?
- B: They are watching TV.

## Language

There is/There are:

### Affirmative

- There is a printer.
- There are some boys here.

### Negative

- There isn't a charger.
- There aren't any tablets.

### Questions

- Is there an MP3 player?
- Are there any mobile phones?

The present continuous:

### Affirmative

- She is writing an email now.
- I'm doing my homework.

### Negative

- They aren't studying.
- I'm not eating now.

### Questions

- What are you doing now?
- Is Ali watching TV now?

Imperative:

- Go to the shop.
- Huda, boil that water.

### Negative

- Don't boil that water, Huda.
- Please, don't open the door.

## Vocabulary

3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
personal information	معلومات شخصية
phone charger	شاحن الهاتف
popular	محبوب / شائع
click on the icon	ينقر على الأيقونة
instructions	تعليمات
school uniform	الزي المدرسي
keep ... secret	يخاطب على سرية
kettle	غلاية
send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
stay safe	ابق آمناً
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية
make a video call	يقوم بإجراء مكالمة فيديو
tap on the icon	يضغط على الأيقونة
mobile phone	تليفون محمول
mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر
technology	التكنولوجيا
MP3 player	مشغل إم بي ثري
nature	الطبيعة
whiteboard	السطح الأبيض
password	كلمة المرور / السر
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

**A** Listening**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Rana likes ..... .  
 a) biology                      b) technology                      c) science                      d) maths
2. She likes playing ..... .  
 a) video games                      b) basketball                      c) tennis                      d) football
3. Rana plays on her ..... .  
 a) laptop                      b) tablet                      c) TV                      d) computer
4. Her favourite subject is ..... .  
 a) English                      b) maths                      c) social studies                      d) computer studies.

**B** Language Functions**2** Complete the following dialogue:

الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢

**Salwa** is telling **Nada** that she is going to the library.**Nada** : Hello, Salwa. Where are you going?**Salwa** : Hello, Nada. (1).....**Nada** : (2).....?**Salwa** : I'm going to the library to read a story. What about you?**Nada** : (3).....**Salwa** : Why are you going to the club?**Nada** : I'm going to the club to play basketball.**Salwa** : (4).....?**Nada** : Yes, I'm in the school basketball team. Do you want to come with me?**Salwa** : (5).....**C** Reading Comprehension**3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do researches and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g., telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What should you do when you are in trouble?

.....

2. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. You should keep your ..... secret.

- a) text                      b) email                      c) poster                      d) password

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....

- a) telephone                      b) instructions  
c) technology                      d) call

6. The underlined word "**parent**" means .....

- a) mum or dad                      b) uncle  
c) teacher                      d) mum's sister



## Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I will send you a/an ..... message soon.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

- a) text                      b) test                      c) photo                      d) icon

2. A ..... is a small computer that you carry around.

السفينة ٢٠٢٢

- a) mouse                      b) mobile                      c) laptop                      d) charger

3. .... the icon on your mobile phone.

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

- a) Click                      b) Tap                      c) Look                      d) Make

4. Young people like to ..... a selfie with their smart phones.

- a) print                      b) keep                      c) take                      d) make

5. My little brother loves ....., so he spends a lot of time in the garden.

- a) nature                      b) future                      c) furniture                      d) culture

6. I can boil water in the ..... to make tea.  
 a) laptop                      b) kettle                      c) charger                      d) radio
7. The opposite of the word "safe" is ".....".  
 a) false                      b) different                      c) dangerous                      d) depressed
8. She would like ..... video games.  
 a) play                      b) to play                      c) playing                      d) played
9. Ahmed is ..... a text message to his father.  
 a) send                      b) sends                      c) sent                      d) sending
10. .... too much TV!  
 a) Watch                      b) Not watch                      c) Watching                      d) Don't watch

القلمونية ٢٠٢٢

المنيا ٢٠٢٣

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. First, putting some water in a kettle. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Ali, didn't go out. It's raining outside. (.....)
3. What she is cooking now? (.....)
4. Can I have any water? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

**E**

**Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

المنوية ٢٠٢٣

**"Technology makes our life easy"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Solve more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



## November Model 1



### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ali is asking Amr about his favourite sports star.**

**Ali** : Who is your favourite sports star?

**Amr** : (1).....

**Ali** : What sport does Mohamed Salah play?

**Amr** : (2).....

**Ali** : (3).....?

**Amr** : He plays for Liverpool Team.

**Ali** : (4).....?

**Amr** : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

**Ali** : Do you want to be like him?

**Amr** : (5).....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A plane is very ..... . It can go at 900 km/h.

- a) tall                      b) long                      c) weak                      d) fast

2. Alice is the main ..... of the story.

- a) crater                      b) character                      c) adventure                      d) book

3. My cousin's hair is not straight. It is .....

- a) blond                      b) short                      c) long                      d) curly

4. You can ..... your mobile using a phone charger.

- a) charge                      b) change                      c) hear                      d) choose

5. You must keep your password .....

- a) easy                      b) famous                      c) secret                      d) known

6. You can ..... a video call to your brother in Dubai.

- a) do                      b) make                      c) send                      d) write


7. His father has got a white long ..... on his face.  
 a) bread                      b) board                      c) beard                      d) broad
8. .... there a mouse next to the laptop?  
 a) Is                              b) Has                              c) Are                              d) Does
9. Hamza ..... got curly hair.  
 a) is                              b) have                              c) was                              d) has
10. At the moment, students ..... to a story.  
 a) listened                      b) are listening                      c) listens                      d) listen


**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. My brother is read a book at the moment. (.....)
2. I was sitting in a cafe now. (.....)
3. Didn't talk to strangers. (.....)
4. **A:** Are there a tablet in your classroom? **B:** Yes, there is. (.....)
5. What is Adel do at the moment? (.....)


Part 2

Final Revision





قم بمراجعة  
 أهم المفردات  
 والقواعد اللغوية  
 والمهارات وحل  
 المزيد من الأسئلة  
 الخاصة بالوحدتين  
 الثالثة والرابعة عن  
 طريق الذهاب لجزء  
 المراجعة الشهرية  
 بملحف التقييم.



Check your QR11W01

**1** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need paper for the ..... .  
 a) camera                      b) screen                      c) printer                      d) mouse
2. The lion is a ..... animal.  
 a) kind                              b) scary                              c) friendly                      d) worry
3. My little daughter has got a big ..... .  
 a) smell                              b) smile                              c) small                              d) smelt
4. My grandfather has got a big ..... on his mouth.  
 a) beard                              b) hair                              c) moustache                      d) eye
5. It's important to stay ..... online.  
 a) safe                              b) worried                              c) angry                              d) colourful
6. You can ..... a selfie on your mobile.  
 a) help                              b) make                              c) run                              d) take
7. .... video games is my favourite hobby.  
 a) Giving                              b) Playing                              c) Doing                              d) Making
8. .... throw rubbish in the street.  
 a) Never                              b) Doesn't                              c) Didn't                              d) Aren't
9. **A:** Can you phone me at 6:00 pm? **B:** No, I ..... .  
 a) can                              b) doesn't                              c) can't                              d) didn't
10. My best friend ..... short, dark hair.  
 a) has got                              b) have got                              c) got                              d) is

**2** Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali have got lots of books. (.....)
2. Ahmed and I has got curly hair. (.....)
3. Ola is write a paragraph at the moment. (.....)
4. There isn't some cheese. (.....)
5. Where can we meeting today? (.....)

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Ahmed is asking Amir about using technology in his school.**

**Ahmed :** Do you use technology at your school?

**Amir :** (1)..... . We use tablets.

**Ahmed :** Really! Can you use a tablet?

**Amir :** (2)..... .

**Ahmed :** (3)..... ?

**Amir :** We use tablets in all subjects.

**Ahmed :** (4)..... ?

**Amir :** Yes, my classroom has got a smart board.

**Ahmed :** Do you use mobile phones at class?

**Amir :** (5)..... . We can't use them.

**2 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

**1.** What's the best title for the passage?

.....

**2.** Who does Salah talk to?

.....

**3.** Do you think Salah is a great sports star?

.....



**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Mohamed Salah gives money to ..... people.

- a) poor
- b) rich
- c) clean
- d) happy

5. "**Fast**" is the opposite of .....

- a) short
- b) weak
- c) slow
- d) friendly

6. Mohamed Salah has got ..... hair.

- a) curly
- b) white
- c) straight
- d) blond

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Keeps your password secret.

(.....)

2. There aren't some books.

(.....)

3. Does she like watch TV?

(.....)

4. Has your father get a beard?

(.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

المناقشة ٢٠٢٣

**"Your favourite sports star"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Unit 5

# Holidays

### *Objectives of the unit*

- Reading** A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English
- Writing** An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday
- Listening** A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out
- Speaking** Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news
- Language** The past simple
- Values** Respect
- Issues** Environmental awareness

Tapescripts



WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب



## A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

### Key Vocabulary

bat (n)	خفاش	make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave (n)	كهف	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلاً	river (n)	نهر
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	see a camel	يرى جملاً
desert (n)	صحراء	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
forest (n)	غابة	swim in the lake	يسبح فى البحيرة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية	visit a family	يزور أسرة
jungle (n)	أدغال/ غابة كثيفة الأشجار	waterfall (n)	شلال

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

dark (adj)	مظلم	museum (n)	متحف
echo (n)	صدى الصوت	quiz (n)	اختبار مصغر
fantastic (adj)	رائع	turn (n)	دور
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ
map (n)	خريطة	weather (n)	طقس

### المفردات الإضافية

### Prepositions

a place with	مكان به	on the beach	على الشاطئ/البلاج
call out	ينادى	ride on a camel	يركب جملاً
frightened of	خائف من	search for	يبحث عن
in the rocks	فى الصخور	think of	يفكر فى

### حروف الجر

#### Check Point

Choose and complete: **with – warm – hotel – mountains**

- 1 The weather is ..... today.
- 2 Climbing ..... is a dangerous sport.
- 3 The beach is a place ..... a lot of sand and water .

يهدف هذا التدریب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية وحروف الجر.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition (con) = conjunction  
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.		
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten	ride	يركب	rode	ridden
have/has	يملك/لديه	had	had	see	يرى	saw	seen
hear	يسمع	heard	heard	speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
get into/in	يدخل في	go out of	يخرج من
quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



### 1 called is called

التي تُسمى / الذي يُسمى  
يسمى

- We visited a city **called** Marrakesh.
- My friend **is called** Mohammed.

### 2 would ('d) like to + inf.

يود أن

- Where **would you like to go**?
- I'd like to **go** to the beach.

### 3 when

عندما (للوقت)

- When** I was eight, I went to Siwa.

### 4 where

حيث (للمكان)


- A forest is a place **where** there are lots of trees.

### Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'd like ..... Al Azhar Park in Cairo.  
 a) visit                      b) visiting                      c) to visit                      d) to visiting
- My teacher ..... Mohammed is from Giza.  
 a) calling                      b) called                      c) is called                      d) calls
- We will visit the village ..... my grandfather was born.  
 a) which                      b) that                      c) where                      d) when

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ 

## Countries/ Cities/ Places

## بلاَد / مدن / أماكن

Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	Marrakesh	مدينة مراكش (بالمغرب)
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Morocco	دولة المغرب
Egypt	مصر	Siwa	واحة سيوة
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفها


Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
get into	يدخل في	enter	يدخل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
fantastic	مدهش	amazing	مدهش

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed	تحول الفعل لصفة	frightened (adj) خائف

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
desert	صحراء	dessert	حلوى
quiet	هادئ	quite	إلى حد ما
hear	يسمع	here	هنا
bat	خفاش	boat	قارب

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى. 

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 1

#### Pre-listening question:

- A place with a lot of sand but no water. What is it?

 Listen to Taha and his sister playing a game. Can you guess the places?

SB page 45

**Taha** Guess<sup>(1)</sup> where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

**Sara** Are there monkeys in the trees?

**Taha** No. It's very dark and quiet.

**Sara** Are you in a forest<sup>(2)</sup>?

**Taha** Yes, I am!

**Sara** My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Taha** I know! You're in the desert<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Sara** No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

**Taha** You're on the beach<sup>(5)</sup>!

**Sara** That's right.

**Taha** Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo) Hello! (echo comes twice)

**Sara** That's easy. You're in a cave<sup>(6)</sup>! Can you see any bats<sup>(7)</sup>?

**Taha** No, I can't. It's very dark in here!



(1) يخمن

(2) غابة / أدغال

(3) رمال

(4) الصحراء

(5) الشاطئ

(6) كهف

(7) خفافيش

#### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:


desert /dezə't/ cave /keɪv/ echo /ekoʊ/

#### Post-listening question:

- Have you ever been in a cave? If yes, how did you feel?

## Pre-reading question:

- How was your last summer holiday?

 Look and read. Match the photos with the descriptions:

SB page 46

## My holiday photos

1.  Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle<sup>(1)</sup>. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave<sup>(2)</sup> because she was frightened!



- (1) يصنع قلعة رملية
- (2) يدخل الكهف
- (3) يقوم بنزهة خلوية
- (4) يتسلف جبلاً
- (5) ينام في خيمة

2.  In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic<sup>(3)</sup> in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.



3.  When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain<sup>(4)</sup>. We saw camels and slept in a tent<sup>(5)</sup> in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!



### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

sandcastle /'sænd,kɑ:səl/

frightened /fraɪtənd/

delicious /dɪlɪʃəs/

### Post-reading questions:

- 1 When did they visit their uncle?
- 2 What activities did they do at Siwa?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Where did you go last summer?

 **Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.**

*WB page 103*



**Hi Eman,**

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm! But I **rode** on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too, and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

**Write soon.**

**Hana**

**Post-reading question:**

- What's this email about?

 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Morocco /mə'ɒrkəʊ/  
Marrakesh /mə'rækeɪʃ/





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... is very high and there's lots of water in it. بور سفيد ٢٠٢٢  
 a) beach                      b) cave                      c) lake                      d) waterfall
2. "....." is a place inside the mountain. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Cave                      b) River                      c) Lake                      d) Waterfall
3. The ..... is my favourite place to go in summer to swim. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) cave                      b) mountain                      c) beach                      d) desert
4. Children like to build ..... on the beach. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
 a) mountains                      b) lakes                      c) waterfalls                      d) sandcastles
5. A ..... is a tropical forest with lots of trees and plants. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) desert                      b) waterfall                      c) cave                      d) jungle
6. People don't like to go ..... caves because they are dark.  
 a) out of                      b) by                      c) for                      d) into
7. We usually ..... a picnic at the weekend.  
 a) swim                      b) find                      c) have                      d) make
8. Most children like playing ..... the beach.  
 a) of                      b) for                      c) on                      d) to
9. Last summer, the ..... was very hot.  
 a) sandcastle                      b) weather                      c) picnic                      d) game
10. Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was .....! القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) frightened                      b) delicious                      c) dark                      d) quiet
11. We sleep in tents when we go to the .....  
 a) villa                      b) hotel                      c) flat                      d) desert
12. We had an English ..... every Sunday, so I have to study hard every day.  
 a) quiz                      b) camp                      c) taste                      d) ride
13. Boys like to ..... their bikes on holidays.  
 a) ride                      b) build                      c) see                      d) make

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother makes ..... food. We all like it. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
a) bad                      b) delicious                      c) unknown                      d) sad
2. When we went camping, my brother ..... a very high mountain. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
a) climbed                      b) chopped                      c) rode                      d) bought
3. We went camping in the desert and slept in a ..... there. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣  
a) tent                      b) lake                      c) river                      d) kitchen
4. There are a lot of trees in the ..... الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
a) jug                      b) sky                      c) jungle                      d) weather
5. There isn't any water in the .....  
a) river                      b) desert                      c) lake                      d) sea
6. Our garden is a good place ..... a lot of trees.  
a) with                      b) for                      c) by                      d) to
7. A ..... is a small animal like a mouse with wings that flies around at night.  
a) boat                      b) bat                      c) bait                      d) bite
8. It's very ..... and quiet in the forest. I can't see anything.  
a) tasty                      b) delicious                      c) safe                      d) dark
9. I saw some boys swimming in the .....  
a) mountain                      b) forest                      c) lake                      d) desert
10. Many people like to ..... on camels.  
a) ride                      b) drive                      c) climb                      d) swim
11. It was my favourite holiday! It was .....  
a) dark                      b) fantastic                      c) terrible                      d) bad
12. I'm trying to find the park on the .....  
a) picnic                      b) map                      c) desert                      d) cave

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

# C Language

## The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

### Usage

### الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.  
- نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتحدث عن فعل حدث في الماضي وانتهى أو حدثين متتابعين في الماضي.
- I **visited** my uncle yesterday.

### 1 Verb "to be":

I He She It	}	<b>was</b>	frightened. hungry. a nurse. big.	<b>Affirmative</b> الإثبات	We You They	}	<b>were</b>	early. at school. quiet.
I He She It			sad. thirsty. a teacher. small.		<b>Negative</b> النفى		We You They	<b>weren't</b>
wasn't = was not				weren't = were not				

### Yes/No Questions:

السؤال بمعنى هل:

+ Affirmative

They were happy.

She was frightened.

? Question

Were they happy?

Was she frightened?

### Got it ?

### Read and correct the underlined words:

1 There are a lot of people on the beach last holiday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود (last) وهي تدل على الماضي.

2 Ali didn't at the park last Monday. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لأنه لا يوجد فعل في المصدر.

## 2 Regular & Irregular verbs:

**Affirmative**  
الإثبات

التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject  
- I **arrived** late for school.

تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

**لاحظ**



1

**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة  
تتكون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للمصدر:

live ▶ lived  
visit ▶ visited  
study ▶ studied

2

**Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة  
يتغير فيها شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة:

eat ▶ ate  
buy ▶ bought  
take ▶ took

**Key words**  
الكلمات الدالة

في الماضي **in the past** - منذ **ago** ... - الماضي **last ...** - أمس **yesterday**  
**in** + سنة في الماضي (in 2010)

- I **bought** this car **in 2015**. - We **visited** Luxor **2 years ago**.

**Negative**  
النفى

نضع (didn't) بين الفاعل والمصدر.

Subject ▶ did not (didn't) + **inf.** + ... .

- You **didn't buy** a new notebook.

**Got it ?**

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

- 1 She don't go to school yesterday. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't) لوجود كلمة (yesterday) الدالة على الماضي البسيط.
- 2 I watched a scary movie next weekend. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (last) لأن فعل الجملة (watched) في الماضي.
- 3 Salma didn't visited her aunt last Friday. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (visit) لأن (didn't) يتبعها مصدر الفعل.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... to Aswan last winter. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) went                      b) go                      c) goes                      d) going
2. .... your friends ready for the exam last week? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Do                      b) Did                      c) Does                      d) Were
3. Yesterday, we didn't ..... our lessons. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) studied                      b) study                      c) studying                      d) studies
4. Mona ..... to school yesterday because she was ill. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢  
 a) not come                      b) doesn't come                      c) don't come                      d) didn't come
5. We camped in the forest and ..... in a tent. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢  
 a) sleep                      b) sleeps                      c) slept                      d) sleeping
6. When I ..... eight, we went to Siwa.  
 a) was                      b) am                      c) is                      d) are
7. We ..... swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm.  
 a) aren't                      b) weren't                      c) didn't                      d) don't
8. Sally ..... happy at the party yesterday.  
 a) has                      b) is                      c) was                      d) were
9. My grandmother ..... a nurse. She was a doctor.  
 a) wasn't                      b) didn't                      c) isn't                      d) hasn't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He visit his friends yesterday. (.....) بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
2. Suzy doesn't like swimming when she was young. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. They travelled by car. They walked. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. I rode on a camel. That is fun. (.....) الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. Rana and Mayada didn't at school yesterday. (.....)
6. They didn't climbed the tree. (.....)

# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last week, we ..... them some presents. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) give                      b) gives                      c) gave                      d) giving
2. He didn't ..... the prize last week.  
 a) win                      b) won                      c) winning                      d) wins
3. We ..... Port Said last year. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) visit                      b) visited                      c) visiting                      d) visits
4. He ..... at home last week. العربية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) were                      b) had                      c) was                      d) is
5. She ..... in Alexandria when she was a little girl. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢  
 a) lives                      b) lived                      c) living                      d) is living
6. Last summer, the weather ..... hot.  
 a) was                      b) were                      c) is                      d) are
7. My family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco last summer.  
 a) are having                      b) having                      c) have                      d) had
8. I ..... Pizza for dinner last night. الحيزة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) eat                      b) eating                      c) ate                      d) eaten
9. We ..... in the sea because it was too cold.  
 a) didn't swim                      b) swam                      c) don't swim                      d) swim

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They study for two hours last night. (.....) الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
2. They don't visit their uncle a week ago. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Ali didn't at school yesterday. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
4. We went to the theatre next week. (.....) الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
5. Were you wear your jacket last night? (.....) الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
6. We played games and rides bikes. (.....) المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة  
فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### How to write about your last weekend.

كيف تكتب عن عطلتك الأسبوعية الماضية.

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان).
- I went with (الشخص / الأشخاص).
- We went by (الوسيلة).
- We (الأنشطة التي قمتم بها).
- We didn't (الأنشطة التي لم نقوم بها).
- It was a fantastic holiday.

#### Writing tips

Review your paragraph for  
spelling and grammar mistakes.  
راجع الأخطاء الإملائية وأخطاء القواعد في  
فقرتك.

### Example

#### Your last holiday

I like travelling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last holiday, I went to Hurghada. It's a beautiful city by the beach. There's a lot to do and see there. I went with my family. We went by bus. It is a beautiful place. We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We didn't see camels there. We ate delicious food, then we played games. My brother rode his bike. We left the place late at night. We enjoyed our time very much. It was a fantastic holiday.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

#### "Last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to .....

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. When did Ragab travel to Aswan?
 

a) Last week.	b) Last month.
c) Last winter.	d) Last summer.
2. Who did Ragab travel with?
 

a) His friends.	b) His class.
c) His relatives.	d) His family.
3. How did Ragab travel?
 

a) By train.	b) By bus.
c) By car.	d) By plane.
4. What did Ragab buy from shops?
 

a) Tickets.	b) Souvenirs.
c) Food.	d) Fruit.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can hear my words again and again inside a ..... .
 

a) river	b) lake	c) forest	d) cave
----------	---------	-----------	---------
2. Can you sleep in a ..... in the desert?
 

a) villa	b) hotel	c) flat	d) tent
----------	----------	---------	---------

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. I ..... on a camel in the forest when we had a picnic there.
 

a) drove	b) rode	c) went	d) flew
----------	---------	---------	---------
4. I can't climb this ..... . It's very high.
 

a) forest	b) mountain	c) street	d) jungle
-----------	-------------	-----------	-----------

الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
5. You can enjoy sitting on the ..... by the sea.
 

a) jungle	b) beach	c) mountain	d) river
-----------	----------	-------------	----------

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
6. There's a lot of ..... in the desert.
 

a) sand	b) castles	c) water	d) plants
---------	------------	----------	-----------

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠
7. A ..... is a place where water falls from a high place.
 

a) waterwheel	b) waterfall	c) lake	d) sea
---------------	--------------	---------	--------

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢



8. She didn't ..... to the beach yesterday.

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

- a) goes                      b) went                      c) gone                      d) go

9. .... you and your friends worried before the last exam?

- a) Was                      b) Are                      c) Were                      d) Did

10. When we arrived, it ..... very windy.

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

- a) is                      b) was                      c) be                      d) were

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mona went to the zoo next week.

(.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠

2. Sara doesn't buy a camera yesterday.

(.....)

3. When I am eight, I went to London.

(.....)

4. I eat fish for lunch yesterday.

(.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

### 4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

#### "A trip you made"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 When I speak, I can hear my words again and again.

It's a/an .....

- a) cave                      b) echo                      c) mountain                      d) jungle

2 It's not good to ..... your friends loudly in the street.

- a) call out                      b) search for                      c) think of                      d) swim in

3 My uncle ..... Nabil is a doctor.

- a) calls                      b) calling                      c) called                      d) is called



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية			
camp (ed) (v)	يعسكر/يخيم	holiday flat (n)	شقة العطلات
castle (n)	قلعة	language school (n)	مدرسة لغات
climb up (ed) (v)	يصعد	student (n)	طالب
exciting (adj)	مثير	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses (n)	دورات في فترة الإجازة	view (n)	منظر طبيعي

### Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية			
dolphin (n)	دولفين	flag (n)	علم
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع بـ	wonderful (adj)	رائع

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **wonderful – castle – souvenirs – student**

- I visited the ..... . It is very ancient.
- We spent a ..... time in Alexandria last summer.
- I bought some ..... from Khan El-Khalili.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية			
do > a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	make > an advertisement	يقوم بعمل إعلان
do > activities	يقوم بأنشطة	make > a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
have > a holiday/time	يقضي إجازة/وقتاً	ride > a horse	يركب حصاناً

## Prepositions

advertisement for	إعلان لـ	for a holiday	لقضاء عطلة
a ride on	رحلة على	get to	يصل إلى
by the lake/beach	بجوار البحيرة/الشاطئ	go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة
find out	يكتشف	in Arabic	باللغة العربية

## حروف الجر

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **do – by – ride – for**

- 1 We can ..... many activities in summer.
- 2 I read an advertisement ..... a good job.
- 3 My father bought a new flat ..... the beach.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
learn يتعلم	learnt	learnt
show يعرض/ يبين	showed	shown

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
stay	يقيم	leave	يترك/يفادر
wonderful	رائع	terrible	فظيع/سيئ جداً

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



Subject + **first/last** + past simple

أول/آخر مرة ...

- When I first **came** to the language school, I was not very good at English.
- I last **saw** my uncle was three days ago.

# Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ



## Definitions

camp	يخيم/يعسكر	sleep for a time in a tent <sup>(1)</sup>
castle	قلعة	a big, strong building <sup>(2)</sup> from the past
dolphin	دولفين	a friendly sea animal
holiday flat	شقة العطلة	a place to stay for a holiday
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	something you buy to remember <sup>(3)</sup> a holiday
view	منظر طبيعي	what you can see from a place

## التعريفات

- (1) خيمة  
(2) مبنى  
(3) يتذكر

## Places

England	إنجلترا	London	لندن
France	فرنسا	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Germany	ألمانيا	the London Eye	عجلة لندن (معلم سياحي)
Jordan	الأردن	Windsor Castle	قلعة وندسور

## أماكن

## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
interesting	شيق	exciting	مثير
wonderful	رائع	amazing/fantastic	مذهل/رائع

## الكلمات ومرادفها

### اللاحقة Suffix

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
advertise (v)	يعلن	-ment		تحول الفعل لاسم		advertisement (n)	إعلان
wonder (v)	يتعجب	-ful		تحول الفعل لصفة		wonderful (adj)	رائع

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
camp	معسكر	comp	مشط
view	منظر طبيعي	review	مقال نقدي
flat	شقة	flag	علم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهجاء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.



## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 3

#### Pre-listening question:

- Where did you go last holiday?

#### Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

**Hatem** Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday<sup>(1)</sup>?

**Yunis** Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks!

**Hatem** Where did you go?

**Yunis** I went to Jordan<sup>(2)</sup> by plane.

**Hatem** Wow! Did you visit your family there?

**Yunis** No, we stayed in a holiday flat<sup>(3)</sup> by the beach.  
We had a wonderful view<sup>(4)</sup> from the windows.  
Every morning, I saw dolphins<sup>(5)</sup> in the sea.

**Hatem** Did you swim in the sea?

**Yunis** Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a map and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle<sup>(6)</sup>. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

**Hatem** How did you get to the castle?

**Yunis** We climbed up the mountain!

**Hatem** Did you buy any souvenirs?

**Yunis** Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir<sup>(7)</sup> for you.

**Hatem** Oh, how interesting! Egypt's flag<sup>(8)</sup> is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour—green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

SB page 48

(1) إجازة/عطلة

(2) الأردن

(3) شقة العطلة

(4) منظر

(5) دولفين

(6) قلعة

(7) هدية تذكارية

(8) علم



#### Post-listening question:

- Where would you like to go next holiday?




#### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:  
castle /kɑ:səl/ souvenir /su:vənɪə/

### Pre-reading question:

- What activities do you do on holiday?

 Read the text quickly and answer the questions in pairs.

SB page 50



## Learn English in London!

- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses<sup>(1)</sup> are for one, two or three weeks.

I had a wonderful time at the language school<sup>(2)</sup>! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries.

My favourite place was Windsor Castle<sup>(3)</sup>. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen<sup>(4)</sup>!



Mona, Egypt



I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye<sup>(5)</sup>, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.



Laura, France



When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects. I enjoyed<sup>(6)</sup> speaking English!



Jurgen, Germany



- (1) دورات تدريبية
- (2) مدرسة لغات
- (3) قلعة وندسور
- (4) ملكة
- (5) عجلة لندن
- (6) يستمتع بـ



### Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think Mona didn't see the Queen?
- 2 Why did Laura like the ride on the London Eye?
- 3 How were Jurgen's lessons?

Complete the email with the past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

WB page 105

Hi Ali,

Last summer, I **travelled** to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I **went** to a language school in Cairo. I **had** a wonderful time. I **was** there for two weeks. The people in Cairo **were** very friendly. Now, I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now, I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top. What did you do last summer?

**Write soon and tell me.**

**Andy, England**

## Project

- Work in groups. Find out which holiday activities people can do in Egypt. Make a list.

قم بالعمل في مجموعة. قم باكتشاف أنشطة الإجازة التي يمكن للناس ممارستها في مصر. قم بعمل قائمة.

- Work in pairs. Make an advertisement for a holiday in Egypt.

قم بالعمل الثنائي. قم بعمل إعلان عن إجازة في مصر.

1. Choose one activity you can do in Egypt. اختر نشاطاً تستطيع فعله في مصر.

2. Design and write an online advertisement and add pictures.

صمم واكتب إعلاناً وصوراً عبر الإنترنت.

3. Show your advertisement to the class and talk about it.

اعرض إعلانك على الفصل وتحدث عنه.



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a beautiful ..... of the river from the top. قنا ٢٠٢٣  
 a) view                      b) review                      c) preview                      d) viewing
2. I bought many ..... for my friends from Paris. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
 a) souvenirs                      b) caves                      c) menu                      d) hobbies
3. When we went camping, my brother ..... up a very high mountain. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) bought                      b) chopped                      c) rode                      d) climbed
4. A dolphin is a friendly ..... animal. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) wild                      b) land                      c) sea                      d) plant
5. I ..... a horse in the forest when we had a picnic there. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢  
 a) drove                      b) rode                      c) went                      d) flew
6. Children like ..... because they can play and enjoy themselves.  
 a) holidays                      b) courses                      c) advertisements                      d) flats
7. We went to Jordan and ..... in a nice hotel.  
 a) lived                      b) enjoyed                      c) left                      d) stayed
8. Tourists like to visit ..... places in a country.  
 a) unfriendly                      b) famous                      c) bad                      d) boring
9. We visited our uncle who lives ..... the beach in Alexandria.  
 a) to                      b) for                      c) by                      d) of
10. Our new flat is ..... . It's cool.  
 a) wonderful                      b) boring                      c) bad                      d) ugly
11. When we went to Jordan, we took a ..... to know every place there.  
 a) course                      b) flat                      c) flag                      d) map
12. We stay in a holiday ..... when we travel to Hurghada.  
 a) activity                      b) flat                      c) course                      d) mountain
13. Egypt's ..... is red, white and black.  
 a) flat                      b) mountain                      c) flag                      d) map



# Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a big, strong building from the past. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
a) castle                      b) hotel                      c) souvenir                      d) desert
2. Most teachers ask us to ..... projects for homework.  
a) do                      b) make                      c) take                      d) see
3. Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣  
a) activities                      b) views                      c) souvenirs                      d) projects
4. Some slow learners take summer ..... to be good at school subjects. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
a) holidays                      b) camps                      c) views                      d) courses
5. You can search for a job in ..... in newspapers. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
a) adventures                      b) advertisements                      c) flats                      d) technology
6. I bought many ..... for my friends from Paris. دمياط ٢٠٢٣  
a) souvenirs                      b) caves                      c) menu                      d) hobbies
7. .... should study their lessons well to be good at them.  
a) Courses                      b) Visitors                      c) Students                      d) Parents
8. London is a/an ..... city. Lots of people like to visit it.  
a) boring                      b) exciting                      c) bad                      d) ugly
9. He ..... a great time at Al Azhar Park.  
a) had                      b) made                      c) rode                      d) did
10. Basmala is good at English because she goes to a/an ..... school.  
a) course                      b) activity                      c) language                      d) subject
11. I decided to buy something to ..... that holiday.  
a) have                      b) stay                      c) remind                      d) remember
12. My favourite activity was a ride ..... the London Eye.  
a) for                      b) at                      c) in                      d) on

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

## C Language

### The Past Simple Tense Questions

الأسئلة في زمن الماضي البسيط

#### Question

#### السؤال

#### 1 Yes/No questions:

Did + subject + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** Did you **watch** TV last night?

- **B:** Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Was/Were + subject + ...?

- **A:** Was he at the cinema last week?

**B:** Yes, he was.

**B:** No, he wasn't.

- **A:** Were they excited about the trip?

**B:** Yes, they were.

**B:** No, they weren't.

#### 2 Wh- questions:

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ► did + subject + **inf.** ...?

- **A:** What time did you **go** to bed?

- **B:** I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

Q. word (أداة استفهام) ► was/were + subject + ...?

- **A:** Where were you yesterday?

- **B:** I was at the cinema with my friends.

#### لاحظ

عند السؤال عن الفاعل في الماضي البسيط لا نستخدم الفعل المساعد (did) بل نستخدم الماضي من الفعل الأساسي:

- Who helped you yesterday? - My mother helped me.

#### Got it ?

#### Read and correct the underlined words:

1 How did you travelled to Paris? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لوجود كلمة (did) التي يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر.

2 Where does he last week? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود كلمة last الدالة على الماضي وعدم وجود فعل في المصدر والفاعل مفرد.

3 Did you in London two days ago? (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (were) لوجود كلمة ago الدالة على الماضي وعدم وجود فعل في المصدر والفاعل جمع.



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where did you go on holiday ..... summer? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
- a) last                      b) next                      c) least                      d) the following
2. **A:** When ..... she return to Cairo? **B:** Last Friday. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
- a) does                      b) did                      c) do                      d) don't
3. Who ..... Hassan see in the park last Tuesday? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
- a) does                      b) did                      c) has                      d) have
4. Did Hany ..... a mountain last year? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
- a) climbing                      b) climb                      c) climbed                      d) climbs
5. .... you ready for the exam yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
- a) Do                      b) Did                      c) Was                      d) Were
6. How ..... your last holiday?
- a) was                      b) did                      c) is                      d) does
7. **A:** Where did you go? **B:** I ..... to Jordan.
- a) go                      b) goes                      c) going                      d) went
8. **A:** Did you watch TV? **B:** Yes, I ..... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
- a) don't                      b) do                      c) didn't                      d) did
9. What did you ..... for dinner last night? الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
- a) eat                      b) ate                      c) eats                      d) eating
10. **A:** Did you visit your family there? **B:** No, we ..... الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
- a) did                      b) was                      c) didn't                      d) wasn't

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Which musical instrument did you played? (.....)
2. Who did you saw last Monday? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Did you and your family staying in a hotel? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. Where do you go last week? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
6. Did you at Alexandria last week? (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢



## 1. Speaking

### Asking and answering questions about your last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن إجازتك الماضية

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
	Where did you go on holiday?		أين ذهبت في الإجازة؟
	I went to Alexandria.		ذهبت إلى الإسكندرية.
	Did you swim in the sea?		هل قمت بالسباحة في البحر؟
	Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.		نعم. ورأيت دولفينًا أيضًا وقمت بالسباحة معه.
	What food did you eat?		ما الطعام الذي أكلته؟
	I ate a lot of fish.		أكلت الكثير من السمك.

### Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

#### Complete the following dialogue:

الفيوم ٢٣

► Ahmed and Ibrahim are talking about the summer holiday he spent in Alexandria.

**Ahmed** : Did you go to Alexandria on holiday?

**Ibrahim** : Yes, I did.

**Ahmed** : (1).....?

**Ibrahim** : Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin, too.

**Ahmed** : (2).....?

**Ibrahim** : I ate fish.

**Ahmed** : Is fish cheap or expensive there?

**Ibrahim** : (3).....

**Ahmed** : Did you have a good time there?

**Ibrahim** : (4).....

**Ahmed** : When did you come back?

**Ibrahim** : (5).....



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



### How to write about your summer holiday

كيفية الكتابة عن إجازتك الصيفية

- Last summer, the weather was (حالة الطقس).
- We went to (المكان).
- It's a/an (صف المكان) place.
- We stayed in a hotel. The hotel was near the beach.
- We went to the beach. I (الأفعال التي قممت بها على الشاطئ).
- My sister/brother (الأنشطة التي قام بها).
- We had a wonderful time there.

### Writing tips

Check your paragraph for spelling and grammar.

- تحقق من القواعد اللغوية أو من عدم وجود أخطاء لغوية في فقرتك.

### Example

#### What you did last summer

Last summer, the weather was very hot. Our father decided to take us to a nice place to have a wonderful time. We thought of lots of places, but we decided to go to Marsa Matrouh. It's a quiet and fantastic place. We stayed in a comfortable hotel. It was near the beach, so we didn't walk too long. We spent a good time on the beach. My little sister made a sandcastle. I swam in the sea whose water was very clean. My mother made us delicious food. My father and mother liked sitting on the beach. My sister and I played with a ball on the beach. We stayed for two weeks there. We enjoyed our time a lot.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"My summer holiday"

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



**1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Last summer, I had a holiday course in English in the exciting city of London. I had a wonderful time at the language school. I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle, but I did not see the Queen. I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops were fantastic and I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. It was really a wonderful visit.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. When did the writer go to London? .....
2. What is the best title for this text? .....
3. Do you think the writer enjoyed the visit? Why/ Why not? .....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The writer bought a lot of ..... from London's shops.  
 a) castles      b) eyes      c) souvenirs      d) shops
5. The opposite of the underlined word "fantastic" is .....  
 a) wonderful      b) amazing      c) exciting      d) terrible
6. The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
 a) London      b) English      c) the Castle      d) holiday

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Students ..... many activities at their schools.  
 a) do      b) make      c) write      d) ride
2. I had a summer course and ..... English well.  
 a) had      b) made      c) learnt      d) taught
3. Tourists buy ..... before they go back to their countries.  
 a) views      b) dolphins      c) souvenirs      d) castles
4. I like English very much and I ..... speaking it.  
 a) hate      b) enjoy      c) leave      d) stay
5. My children like to go ..... a holiday to Hurghada.  
 a) on      b) in      c) at      d) about

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

6. I went to the desert and ..... a horse there.  
 a) did                      b) made                      c) rode                      d) climbed
7. A ..... is an old building from the past.  
 a) flag                      b) view                      c) souvenir                      d) castle
8. What did Nader ..... in his office yesterday?  
 a) found                      b) find                      c) finds                      d) finding
9. .... Sally at home last Friday?  
 a) Was                      b) Did                      c) Were                      d) Does
10. .... Ahmed and Sami play tennis yesterday?  
 a) Were                      b) Are                      c) Did                      d) Was

كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. What did Younis see and did there? (.....) الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
2. Where did she last summer? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. Where did Magdy spent the weekend? (.....) الغربية ٢٠٢٢
4. Do you go on holiday last week? (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"An English course in London"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 How did you ..... the castle?  
 a) walk                      b) arrive                      c) get to                      d) go
- 2 I have two friends from England. I talk to them ..... English.  
 a) in                      b) at                      c) by                      d) with
- 3 Who ..... with you yesterday?  
 a) goes                      b) didn't go                      c) go                      d) going



### A Vocabulary

#### Key Vocabulary

busy (adj)	مزدحم	postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	sign (n)	لافتة
light (n)	ضوء/مصباح	snails (n)	قواقع
pass (ed) (v)	يمر / يجتاز	tourist (n)	سائح

#### المفردات الرئيسية

#### Additional Vocabulary

bath time (n)	وقت الاستحمام	response (n)	رد فعل/استجابة
emotion (n)	شعور/عاطفة	theatre (n)	مسرح
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	ticket (n)	تذكرة
play (n)	مسرحية	tired (adj)	متعب/مرهق

#### المفردات الإضافية

#### Language Expressions

be > back	يعود/يرجع	go to > sleep	يذهب للنوم
do > a journey	يغوم برحلة	have > a view of	يلقى نظرة على
follow > rules	يتبع القواعد	time	لديه وقت

#### التعبيرات اللغوية

#### Prepositions

for a holiday	لقضاء إجازة	go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب
for example	على سبيل المثال	in bed	فى السرير
get on	يركب على	on the train	فى القطار
go in water	ينزل فى الماء	on TV	فى التلفزيون

#### حروف الجر

Check Point

Choose and complete: **for – theatre – light – tickets**

- 1 We can see plays and shows at the .....
- 2 We can't enter the cinema without .....
- 3 My family went to Hurghada ..... a holiday.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لاختيار فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية وحروف  
الجر.



## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
fall	يقم/يسقط	fell	fallen
leave	يترك/يفادر	left	left

## Words and Opposites

## الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح
lose	يخسر	win	يفوز/يكسب

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ 

## Famous Places

## أماكن مشهورة

Australia	أستراليا	the Louvre	متحف اللوفر
Canada	كندا	the Nile	النيل
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لكسمبورج	the River Seine	نهر السين
Ramses Station	محطة رمسيس	the Science Museum	متحف العلوم
the Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل	the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك

## Words and Synonyms

## الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
closed	مغلق	locked	مغلق
pass	يمر/يجتاز	succeed	ينجح

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
tour (n)	جولة	-ist	تحول الاسم لاسم فاعل	tourist (n)	سائح
wind (n)	الرياح	-y	تحول الاسم لصفة	windy (adj)	كثير الرياح

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Pre-listening question:

- How was your last holiday?

### Listen. What ate Mazin's ice cream?

**Man** What did you do yesterday, Mazin?

**Mazin** I went to the zoo.

**Man** Oh, that's interesting<sup>(1)</sup>! Did you enjoy the day?

**Mazin** No, I didn't.

**Man** Oh, dear<sup>(2)</sup>. Why not?

**Mazin** Well, first we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.

**Man** What a pity<sup>(3)</sup>! So you didn't see them?

**Mazin** No, we didn't. Then, we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

**Man** What did you do next?

**Mazin** Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.

**Man** Wow! How exciting<sup>(4)</sup>!

**Mazin** Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

**Man** Oh, no<sup>(5)</sup>! What happened?

**Mazin** An elephant ate my ice cream!

### Lesson 5

SB page 51

(1) ذلك شيق!

(2) يا للهول! يا إلهي!

(3) يا للأسف!

(4) كم هو مثير!

(5) آوه لا! يا إلهي!



### Post-listening questions:

1 Why do you think Mazin didn't see the bats?

2 If you were Mazin, how would you feel when the elephant ate your ice cream?

**Pre-reading question:**

- Do you think Paris is a great city for a holiday? Why/ Why not?

 **Read Fatma's email.**

SB page 52

**From** : Fatma  
**To** : Azza  
**Subject** : My holiday

**Hi, Azza!**

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails<sup>(1)</sup>!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art<sup>(2)</sup> at the Louvre, but it was closed.

Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards<sup>(3)</sup>. I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light<sup>(4)</sup> on the top.

**See you soon!**

**Fatma**

 **Note:**

snail /sneɪl/  
 Luxembourg/  
 Seine /seɪn/

Eiffel /'aɪfəl/  
 /'lʌksəm,bɜːg/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:



(1) قواقع

(2) الفن/الرسم

(3) بطاقات بريدية

(4) ضوء/مصباح

**Post-reading question:**

- If you were Fatma, would you enjoy your holiday? Give reasons.

**Pre-reading question:** - Do you like travelling by train?

 **Put the email into the correct order.**

WB page 107



**Hi Fady,**

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train. There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings!

The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

**See you soon!**

**Mazin**



**Post-reading question:**

- How did Mazin travel to Aswan?



**Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Australia /d'streɪlɪə/ station /steɪʃən/

## Values

Look at these **signs**. What do they mean?

انظر إلى الإشارات. ماذا تعني؟



1. Why do places have these rules for tourists?

لماذا تضع الأماكن هذه القواعد للسائحين؟

2. Can you think of any more rules for tourists?

هل يمكنك التفكير في قواعد أكثر للسائحين؟



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This ..... says, "Don't walk on the grass". القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) signal                      b) list                      c) sign                      d) song
2. What school ..... should we follow? البحيرة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) games                      b) rules                      c) gates                      d) classes
3. Ahmed doesn't have any time to lose. He is always ..... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣  
 a) busy                      b) free                      c) easy                      d) lazy
4. .... come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great mountains. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٠  
 a) Thieves                      b) Tourists                      c) Bats                      d) Lorries
5. We didn't have time to go to the Science Museum, what a .....! القاهرة ٢٠٢٠  
 a) dear                      b) really                      c) no                      d) pity
6. The children are sleeping now. They are ..... bed.  
 a) with                      b) for                      c) in                      d) to
7. I went to the shop to buy tea, but the shop was .....  
 a) opened                      b) open                      c) close                      d) closed
8. It rained a lot, but the match .....  
 a) passed                      b) continued                      c) rode                      d) slept
9. I sent my friend a ..... on his birthday.  
 a) ticket                      b) snail                      c) postcard                      d) sign
10. Some children like to play with ..... on the beach.  
 a) snails                      b) tickets                      c) signs                      d) rules
11. He went to the ..... to watch the new play.  
 a) park                      b) zoo                      c) library                      d) theatre
12. Please, tell me what .....  
 a) happened                      b) showed                      c) followed                      d) slept
13. The bathroom is ready. It's ..... time.  
 a) sign                      b) light                      c) bath                      d) ticket



**Speaking**

**Responding to good/bad news**

الرد على الأخبار الجيدة/السيئة

<b>A) Good news:</b> 😊	الأخبار الجيدة	<b>B) Bad news:</b> 😞	الأخبار السيئة
How exciting!	كم هو مثير!	Oh, dear!	يا للهول! / يا إلهي!
Really?	حقاً!	Oh, no!	أوه لا! / يا إلهي!
Wow!	رائع!	What a pity!	يا للأسف! / يا للحسرة!
That's interesting!	ذلك شيق!		

**Speaking Exercise**



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

القيومية ٢٠٢٢

- Nahla is very tired because she had a lot of work at home.**
- Nahla :** Hello, Noha. Come in, please.
- Noha :** Hi, Nahla. (1).....?
- Nahla :** I didn't come to school today because I was very tired.
- Noha :** (2).....! Why?
- Nahla :** I had a lot of work at home.
- Noha :** Did you finish it?
- Nahla :** (3).....
- Noha :** Did your daughter help you?
- Nahla :** (4).....
- Noha :** (5).....?
- Nahla :** She didn't help me because she had a test.



هذا التدريب عبارة عن أسئلة تراكمية  
تهدف لقياس مدى استيعابك للدرس.

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Nour** is telling Sarah about her trip to Paris.

**Sarah** : What are you doing?

**Nour** : (1).....

**Sarah** : Photos of your trip! (2).....?

**Nour** : I went to Paris.

**Sarah**: (3).....?

**Nour** : I visited the Eiffel Tower and the museum.

**Sarah**: What did you buy there?

**Nour** : (4).....

**Sarah**: Can I see them?

**Nour** : (5).....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **A:** We didn't want to swim in the sea. **B:** What a .....

- a) pity                      b) dear                      c) really                      d) no

2. Tourists usually stay in ..... when they visit other countries.

- a) mountains                      b) hotels  
c) tents                      d) caves

3. I will take holiday ..... to be good at English.

- a) tours                      b) towers  
c) courses                      d) schools

4. I ..... a wonderful time last week.

- a) had                      b) made  
c) did                      d) took

5. How exciting! Youssef ..... his driving test.

- a) failed                      b) passed  
c) planned                      d) found

6. We ..... our weekend. It was wonderful.

- a) enjoyed                      b) joined                      c) made                      d) did

7. I can't see anything. There's no .....

- a) lit                      b) height                      c) light                      d) dark

8. **A:** ..... you go to Alexandria? **B:** Yes, I did.

- a) Do                      b) Did                      c) Does                      d) Is

القاهرة ٢٣ - ٢٠

9. Did you ..... basketball yesterday?

- a) play                      b) played                      c) playing                      d) are playing

10. Why ..... he sad last night?

- a) is                      b) does                      c) was                      d) did

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. They travelled by car. They walked.

(.....) القاهرة ٢٣ - ٢٠

2. Where do you go last week?

(.....) القاهرة ٢٣ - ٢٠

3. How did your last weekend?

(.....)

4. Samy didn't came to school yesterday.

(.....)

### 4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

الدقهلية ٢٣ - ٢٠

#### "Your last holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Ugh! You're eating .....

- a) nails                      b) lights                      c) snails                      d) rules

2 There were many people from many countries on the train, .....  
England and France.

- a) for example                      b) so                      c) because                      d) when

3 Where ..... yesterday evening?

- a) you did                      b) did you                      c) you were                      d) were you



## Vocabulary

beach	شاطئة
light	ضوء / مصباح
camp (ed)	يعسكر / يخيم
London Eye	عجلة لندن معلم سياحي
make a sandcastle	يصنع قلعة رملية
cave	كهف
climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلاً
dolphin	دولفين
ride a bike	يركب دراجة
eat delicious food	يأكل طعاماً لذيذاً
fantastic	رائع
rules	قواعد
frightened of	خائف من
sign	لافتة
sleep in a tent	يلام في خيمة
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة
souvenir	هدية تذكارية
holiday courses	دورات في فترة الإجازة
swim in the lake	يسبح في البحيرة
holiday flat	شقة العطلة
waterfall	شلال

## Language

### The Past Simple

#### 1 Form:

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل + الماضي البسيط  
- I arrived late for school.

#### 2 Key words:

(yesterday  
... ago - في الماضي  
in the past  
in + سنة في الماضي (in 2010)

#### 3 Negative:

Subject + did not (didn't) + inf. + ....  
- You didn't buy a new notebook.

#### 4 Yes/No questions:

- Did + subject + inf. ....?  
- Did you watch TV last night?

#### 5 Wh- questions:

Q. word (اداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf. ....?

A: What time did you go to bed?  
B: I went to bed at 10 o'clock.

## Skills

1. Asking and answering questions about your last holiday:

A: Where did you go on holiday?

B: I went to Alexandria.

A: Did you swim in the sea?

B: Yes, I did. I saw a dolphin too, and I swam with it.

A: What food did you eat?

B: I ate a lot of fish.

2. Responding to good/bad news:

A) Responding to good news:

How exciting!

Really?

Wow!

That's interesting!

B) Responding to bad news:

Oh, dear!

Oh, no!

What a pity!



## A Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. When did you go to Jordan?

a) Last year.

b) Last holiday.

c) Last month.

d) Yesterday.

2. Where did you stay?

a) On a farm.

b) On the beach.

c) In a hotel.

d) In a holiday flat.

3. How were the places you visited?

a) Famous.

b) Boring.

c) Cool.

d) Busy.

4. How was your holiday?

a) Late.

b) Busy.

c) Great.

d) Ugly.

## B Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**Salma is telling Fatima about her visit to Alexandria.**

**Fatima :** Where did you go on holiday last year?

**Salma :** (1).....

**Fatima :** (2).....?

**Salma :** I stayed in my uncle's flat.

**Fatima :** (3).....?

**Salma :** I travelled by train.

**Fatima :** Did you swim in the sea?

**Salma :** (4).....

**Fatima :** What did you eat there?

**Salma :** (5).....

## C Reading Comprehension

القبليوية ٢٠٢٣

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Azza,

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the gardens. We also went on a boat on the river. But, we did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought some postcards; I also bought you a souvenir. It is a very small Eiffel Tower! You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?  
.....
2. What did Fatma buy from the busy market?  
.....
3. Do you think Fatma enjoyed her holiday in Paris? Why? Why not?  
.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to .....  
a) picnic      b) The Louvre      c) Paris      d) Eiffel Tower
5. Fatma bought a ..... for Azza.  
a) souvenir      b) postcard      c) food      d) museum
6. The busy market was ..... Fatma's hotel.  
a) far from      b) behind      c) in front of      d) next to

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Egypt, we have the longest ..... in the world.  
a) sea      b) waterfall      c) river      d) forest
2. They stay in a holiday ..... by the beach.  
a) flat      b) fly      c) float      d) fat

الفاخرة ٢٠٢٣

3. Sohaila didn't want to go into the ..... because there were many bats.  
 a) cave                      b) cafe                      c) shop                      d) club
4. These shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of .....  
 a) waterfalls                      b) castles                      c) souvenirs                      d) caves القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. She bought a flat with a nice ..... on the Nile.  
 a) course                      b) queen                      c) review                      d) view
6. We went ..... a boat trip last week.  
 a) on                      b) of                      c) in                      d) at
7. You can see a lot of ..... for holiday courses in newspapers.  
 a) achievements                      b) advertisements                      c) signs                      d) experiments
8. I ..... lunch with Yasmeen last Friday.  
 a) have                      b) had                      c) having                      d) am having
9. They ..... football yesterday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 a) played                      b) play                      c) playing                      d) plays
10. **A:** Where did he ..... in the desert? **B:** In a tent. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) sleep                      b) slept                      c) sleeping                      d) sleeps

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. It rain hard last night. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. She didn't at school yesterday. (.....) الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
3. Where did you stayed? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. Does your mother cook last night? (.....)

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

**"A nice trip you had"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



## Unit 6

### Let's eat!

#### Objectives of the unit

- Reading** A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa
- Writing** A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café
- Listening** A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café
- Speaking** Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café
- Language** Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice
- Life Skills** Decision making; problem solving
- Issues** Preventative health

Tapescripts



WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب



## A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيداً لدرجة الإتيان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لمحفق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

### Key Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary		المفردات الرئيسية	
bring/brought (v)	يحضّر	perfect (adj)	ممتاز
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
equipment (n)	معدات	recipe (n)	وصفة طعام
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	review (n)	نقد/مقالة نقدية
ingredients (n)	مقادير / مكونات	sweet (adj)	حلو
<b>Cooking verbs</b> أفعال الطهو		<b>Kitchenware</b> أدوات المطبخ	
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	bowl (n)	سلطانية
boil (ed) (v)	يغلي	cup (n)	فنجان
cook (ed) (v)	يطهي/يطبخ	saucepan (n)	قدر صغير
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاي

### Additional Vocabulary

Additional Vocabulary		المفردات الإضافية	
instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	share (d) (v)	يشارك
<b>Kinds of food</b> أنواع الأطعمة			
<b>Countable nouns</b> أسماء معدودة		<b>Uncountable nouns</b> أسماء غير معدودة	
crisps رقائق البطاطس	olives زيتون	chocolate شوكولاتة	hummus حمص
figs تين	peppers فلفل	cinnamon قرفة	rice pudding أرز بودنج
nuts جوز/بندق	raisins زبيب	coconut جوزة الهند	salad سلطة

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

add – perfect – rice – peppers

- 1 My mother is a ..... cook.
- 2 My sister bought green ..... for salad.
- 3 I always prefer ..... pudding for dessert.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

## Prepositions

cook for  
decide to + inf.

يطبخ ل recipe for  
يقرر أن put ..... into

## حروف الجر

وصفة طعام ل  
يضع .... في

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
boil	يغلي	freeze	يجمد
delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/كريه
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
perfect	ممتاز/مثالي	imperfect	غير مثالي

## الكلمات وعكسها

### Check Point

Choose and complete: **horrible – for – to**

- I read a good recipe ..... steak.
- This cake is ..... I can't taste it.

يهدف هذا  
التدريب لقياس  
فهمك لحروف  
الجر والكلمات  
وعكسها.

## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيداً لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



### 1 decide to + inf.

My father **decided to** buy a new car.

يقرر أن

### 2 Giving instructions

Add the sugar to the rice and **stir** again.

إعطاء تعليمات  
عند إعطاء تعليمات نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



## Words and Synonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ
healthy	صحي	well	بصحة جيدة

## الكلمات ومرادفها

## Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
equip (v)	يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	equipment (n)	معدات
health (n)	صحة	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	healthy (adj)	صحي

## Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-		تعطي عكس المعنى		perfect (adj)	ممتاز	imperfect (adj)	غير مثالي
un-		تعطي عكس المعنى		healthy (adj)	صحي	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحي

## Countable & Uncountable nouns

## أسماء تعدد / لا تعدد

Countable nouns		أسماء معدودة		Uncountable nouns		أسماء غير معدودة	
beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم	cheese	جبين	sugar	سكر
biscuits	بسكويت	vegetables	خضراوات	chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
cakes	كعك			fish	سمك	meat	لحم

## Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
fridge	ثلاجة	bridge	كوبرى
tasty	لذيذ	nasty	سيئ
prefer	يفضل	refer	يشير

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة في الهماء ولكن مختلفة في المعنى.

### Check Point

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Wow! Did you make that cake? It looks delicious! The synonym of "delicious" is ".....".  
 a) well                      b) nasty                      c) tasteless                      d) tasty
- To get the noun from the verb "equip", we add the suffix ".....".  
 a) -ive                      b) -ment                      c) -ness                      d) -ion
- To get the opposite of "perfect", we add the prefix ".....".  
 a) ir-                      b) in                      c) im-                      d) dis-



## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 1

#### Pre-listening question:

- Can you make lunch by yourself?

 Listen to Nadia and her brother Omar.

Which two things do they not have?

**Nadia** Let's make lunch. I think we've got all the food.

**Omar** There is some salad. Is there any hummus<sup>(1)</sup>?

**Nadia** No, there isn't. But there are some olives<sup>(2)</sup>.

**Omar** There are some peppers<sup>(3)</sup>, too.

**Nadia** Good. Is there any cheese?

**Omar** Yes, there is. I've got it.

**Nadia** What about figs<sup>(4)</sup>? Are there any figs?

**Omar** No! There aren't any figs.

**Nadia** There are some raisins<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Omar** That's good.

SB page 55

(1) حمص

(2) زيتون

(3) فلفل

(4) تين

(5) زبيب



#### Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

hummus /hu:məs/ pepper /pepə/ raisin /reizən/

#### Post-listening question:

- What are Nadia and Omar going to make?

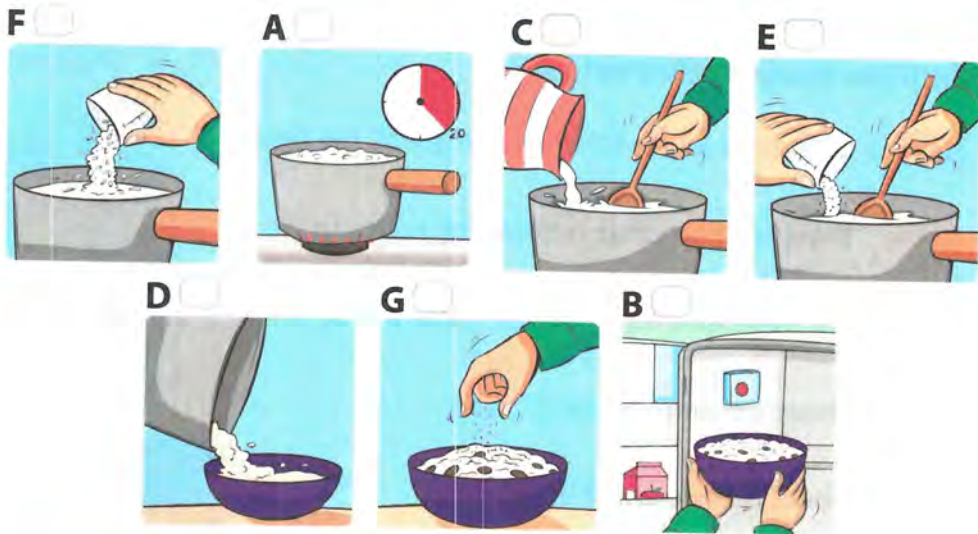
## Pre-reading question:

- Do you like Roz Bel Laban?

Read the recipe and put these pictures in the correct order.

SB page 56

## Roz Bel Laban: Egyptian Rice Pudding



### Ingredients

- 1 cup<sup>(1)</sup> of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- ¼ a cup of raisins
- ¼ a cup of nuts
- ¼ a **teaspoon**<sup>(2)</sup> of cinnamon

### Instructions

1. Put the rice and water in a **saucepan**<sup>(3)</sup>.
2. **Boil**<sup>(4)</sup> the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. **Add**<sup>(5)</sup> the milk slowly as you **stir**<sup>(6)</sup>.
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the **fridge**<sup>(7)</sup>.

فنجان (1) ملعقة شاي (2) قدر صغير (3) يغلى (4) يضيف (5) يقلب (6) ثلاثية (7)



### Note :

pudding /'pʊdɪŋ/  
cinnamon /sɪnəməŋ/  
bowl /bəʊl/


تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

ingredient /ɪŋɡri:'diənt/  
saucepan /sɔ:'spæn/

**Note:**  
عند إعطاء تعليمات  
تبدأ الجملة بمصدر  
الفعل.

### Post-reading question:

- Are you going to try making rice pudding?

 **Read the reviews of the recipe. Who did not like it?**

**SB page 57**

**Really easy!**

★★★★★

- This is a great recipe.
- It's really easy to make.
- There aren't **a lot of** ingredients and it's very quick to cook.

**Fawzi**

**OK, but a bit boring**

★★★

- I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are **too many** raisins.
- I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

**Hana**

**Perfect!**

★★★★★

- There are **a lot of** rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's **enough** rice pudding for the whole family.
- There's **a lot of** sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.

**Nabila**

**Not like my mum's rice pudding!**

★★

- My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good.
- There's **too much** sugar and there aren't **enough** other ingredients.

**Salem**




**Note:**

recipe /resɪpi/

coconut /kəʊkənʌt/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

 **Complete the text with *a lot of*, *enough*, *too much* or *too many*.**

**WB page 110**

Mrs Amal has **a lot of** friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has **enough** plates for people to eat on, but she does not have **enough** chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has **too much** fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people, but they can't all sit down. There are **too many** people and not **enough** chairs!





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "....." is not a cooking verb. المجموعة ٢٢٢
  - a) Pudding.
  - b) Boil.
  - c) Stir.
  - d) Add.
2. Put rice and water in a ..... before cooking rice pudding. المجموعة ٢٢٣
  - a) bag
  - b) teaspoon
  - c) saucepan
  - d) cup
3. Sami thinks that the ..... of rice pudding is easy. المجموعة ٢٢٣
  - a) recipe
  - b) recycling
  - c) road
  - d) equipment
4. Who cooked this? It's ..... I like it.
  - a) salty
  - b) delicious
  - c) ugly
  - d) unhealthy
5. .... the rice and water for 20 minutes.
  - a) Freeze
  - b) Eat
  - c) Boil
  - d) Bring
6. My mother uses healthy ..... to cook our food.
  - a) bowls
  - b) ingredients
  - c) instructions
  - d) fridges
7. Put the rice pudding ..... bowls.
  - a) from
  - b) into
  - c) for
  - d) with
8. We keep our food in the ..... to be cold and good.
  - a) cooker
  - b) fridge
  - c) desk
  - d) bowl
9. Put the ....., cinnamon and nuts on top of the rice pudding.
  - a) water
  - b) salt
  - c) raisins
  - d) peppers
10. Hazem forgot to ..... the sugar in his tea.
  - a) eat
  - b) cook
  - c) boil
  - d) stir
11. There are easy ..... to make rice pudding.
  - a) meals
  - b) teams
  - c) groups
  - d) instructions
12. We use sugar to make our food or drinks ..... .
  - a) ugly
  - b) bad
  - c) sweet
  - d) salty
13. I like eating ..... They are full of Vitamin E.
  - a) nuts
  - b) bowls
  - c) cups
  - d) pots

## Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't ..... much sugar to tea. It is unhealthy.  
a) work                      b) buy                      c) add                      d) bring
2. Your idea is ..... . They will like it.  
a) ugly                      b) boring                      c) perfect                      d) bad
3. .... is a natural drink and very healthy.  
a) Raisin                      b) Pepper                      c) Cinnamon                      d) Nuts
4. It's ..... to eat lots of crisps.  
a) healthy                      b) unhealthy                      c) nice                      d) good
5. My mother always ..... lunch at three o'clock.  
a) makes                      b) does                      c) plays                      d) wears
6. You can put a ..... of cinnamon now.  
a) pan                      b) pot                      c) saucepan                      d) teaspoon
7. Most people in Egypt eat ..... for breakfast.  
a) beans                      b) fish                      c) meat                      d) recipes
8. Put the rice into a big ..... .  
a) field                      b) cup                      c) cupboard                      d) bowl
9. Making rice pudding is ..... . Everyone can make it very quickly.  
a) bad                      b) difficult                      c) easy                      d) hard
10. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like ..... food.  
a) ugly                      b) hot                      c) salty                      d) sweet
11. I don't like raisins. I ..... rice pudding with coconut.  
a) stir                      b) share                      c) prefer                      d) bring
12. Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking ..... ten people.  
a) for                      b) in                      c) at                      d) on
13. Now come to eat, all the food is ..... .  
a) full                      b) ready                      c) unhealthy                      d) empty

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## C Language

### Countable and uncountable nouns

#### الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

#### 1 Uncountable nouns

#### الأسماء غير المعدودة

meat – sugar – salt – cheese – salad – juice – hummus

- **Uncountable nouns do not have a plural form. We cannot count them and we cannot use a/an before them.**

• الأسماء التي لا تعد ليس لها جمع. لا يمكن عدّها ولا يتم استخدام (a/an) قبلها.

- There is some **bread** on the table.
- There isn't any **meat** in the dish.

#### 2 Countable nouns

#### الأسماء المعدودة

(cake – cakes) / (fig – figs) / (olive – olives) / (tomato – tomatoes)

- **Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an before a singular countable noun. The plural usually ends in -s.**

• الأسماء المعدودة: هي الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها وتكون مفرداً أو جمعاً. يمكن استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد فقط. ينتهي الاسم الجمع غالباً بحرف (s).

#### Countable nouns

1

#### Singular مفرد

- نستخدم الفعل في حالة المفرد إذا كان الاسم مفرداً
- There is a **restaurant** in this street.
- This is not an **olive**. It's a **peach**.

2

#### Plural جمع

- نستخدم الفعل في حالة الجمع إذا كان الاسم جمعاً.
- There are some **shops** in this street.
- There aren't any **peppers**.

#### لاحظ

يتم استخدام (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد:

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a – e – i – o – u):

- There's **an** **apple** on the table.
- Ola ate **an** **orange**.

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن:

- There's **a** **car** in front of my house.
- There's **a** **book** in my bag.



## Remember

3

There is (يوجد للمفرد / للكمية)

There are (يوجد للجمع فقط)

### Form:

- There is / isn't (اسم مفرد يعد/اسم لا يعد)
- There is **an apple** on the table.
- There is **some rice** in the dish.
- There isn't **any sugar** in the tea.

- There are/ aren't (اسم جمع)
- There are **some apples** on the table.
- There are **some raisins**.
- There aren't **any potatoes** in the market.

### Question:

- Is there + اسم مفرد يعد/اسم لا يعد .....?
- Is there **an apple** on the table?

### Question:

- Are there + اسم جمع .....?
- Are there **any apples** on the table?



## Remember

4

Some & Any

بعض / أي

### Some

- We use "some" for **affirmative** sentences.

- نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) مع الجمل المثبتة. نستخدم بعدها اسماً (يعد) في حالة الجمع أو اسماً لا يعد (كمية).

- There are **some figs** in this dish.
- There is **some rice** in this dish.

(countable)  
(uncountable)

### لاحظ

- We use **some** in Yes/ No questions that are offers or requests.

◀ يمكننا استخدام (some) في السؤال في حالتى (العرض والطلب).

- Would you like **some** tea? ▶ offer عرض
- Can I have **some** books? ▶ request طلب

### Any

- We use "any" for **negative sentences** and **questions**.

- نستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) مع الجمل المنفية وفى السؤال. نستخدم بعدها اسماً (يعد) في حالة الجمع أو اسماً لا يعد (كمية).

- There **aren't any** olives. (جملة منفية)
- **Has** koshari got **any** meat in it? (سؤال)

## a lot of, enough, too much, too many

- We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.

- يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد.

## a lot of

- تأتي بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يُعد. (تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شيء بكثرة)

- There is a lot of sugar.
- There are a lot of rice pudding recipes.

## enough

- تأتي بمعنى (كاف) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع) / اسم لا يُعد. (تستخدم للتعبير عن تواجد شيء بالكمية أو العدد المناسب)

- There are not enough chairs.
- There is enough rice pudding for all the family.

## too many

- تأتي بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم يُعد (جمع). (تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شيء زائد عن العدد اللازم)

- There are too many people in the party.

## too much

- تأتي بمعنى (كثير من) ويتبعها اسم لا يُعد. (تستخدم للتعبير عن وجود شيء زائد عن الكم اللازم)

- There's too much rice and fish.

 Got it ?

## Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 I saw a lot animals in the zoo.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (lot of).

- 2 He put too many salt in the food.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (much) لأن salt اسم لا يُعد.

- 3 We have a bread for all. There isn't too much.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (enough) لأن كلمة bread اسم لا يُعد، والمعنى يحتاج لكلمة كافٍ.

- 4 I don't want some sugar.

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأن الجملة منفية.

- 5 There is a boy in the classroom?

(.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Is there) لوجود علامة استفهام فهي صيغة سؤال.





### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There ..... a lot of snow in the mountains. القريبة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) does                      b) is                      c) has                      d) were
2. There are ..... boys in the family, but there aren't many girls. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) too much                      b) much                      c) too many                      d) a lot
3. Don't put ..... butter in the pan. الفليويه ٢٠٢٢  
 a) enough                      b) many                      c) too much                      d) some
4. There aren't ..... potatoes in the fridge. القاهره ٢٠٢٢  
 a) any                      b) some                      c) an                      d) a
5. There is ..... cheese in the fridge. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 a) an                      b) as                      c) a                      d) some
6. There ..... figs in the cupboard. البحيره ٢٠٢٢  
 a) isn't any                      b) is any                      c) are any                      d) aren't any
7. There is ..... rice for you.  
 a) enough                      b) any                      c) many                      d) lot
8. This cake is very sweet. There's too ..... sugar in it. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢  
 a) enough                      b) much                      c) many                      d) lot of
9. There are ..... people on the beach today. Let's go to another one. WB  
 a) too much                      b) too many                      c) enough                      d) a lot of
10. I don't have ..... friends.  
 a) a                      b) some                      c) any                      d) much

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Is there any computers in the classroom? (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. There are any printers in my classroom. (.....) البحيره ٢٠٢٢
3. There are a lot of sand in the desert. (.....) الفليويه ٢٠٢٢
4. We shouldn't eat some crisps. (.....) صباط ٢٠٢٣
5. There is too many kids in the club. (.....)
6. There are any carrots in the fridge? (.....) السرقه ٢٠٢٢

# Time to Practise



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There ..... any notebooks in my bag.
 

a) is	b) isn't	c) are	d) aren't
-------	----------	--------	-----------
2. There's ..... hummus in the jar.
 

a) any	b) some	c) many	d) a lot
--------	---------	---------	----------
3. There are ..... people in the market today.
 

a) too much	b) much	c) a lot	d) too many
-------------	---------	----------	-------------
4. She wants to buy another book, but there ..... enough money with her.
 

a) is	b) are	c) aren't	d) isn't
-------	--------	-----------	----------
5. Are there ..... apples in the fridge?
 

a) a	b) any	c) much	d) an
------	--------	---------	-------
6. There is not ..... rain for orange trees to grow in the desert.
 

a) too much	b) too many	c) enough	d) a lot of
-------------	-------------	-----------	-------------
7. I don't have ..... money to buy this dress.
 

a) any	b) some	c) many	d) lot
--------	---------	---------	--------
8. Let's go to the shops. There is ..... time before the train leaves.
 

a) little	b) too many	c) enough	d) many
-----------	-------------	-----------	---------
9. There ..... figs in the cupboard.
 

a) is any	b) are any	c) aren't any	d) aren't some
-----------	------------	---------------	----------------
10. .... any subjects you don't like?
 

a) There is	b) There are	c) Is there	d) Are there
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

## 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Are there some tomatoes in the fridge? (.....) الصومعة ٢٠٢٣
2. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it. (.....) الصومع ٢٠٢٣
3. She put too many salt in the food. (.....) الفاهرة ٢٠٢٣
4. There isn't some cheese in the fridge. (.....) الفاهرة ٢٠٢٢
5. There isn't any canals near our village. (.....)
6. There aren't a charger in my room. (.....)

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



## D Skills



### 1. Speaking

#### Ask and answer questions about food

السؤال والإجابة عن الطعام

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
What food do you like?	I like salad and meat.	ما الطعام الذى تحبه؟ أحب السلطة واللحم.	
What food don't you like?	I don't like olives.	ما الطعام الذى لا تحبه؟ لا أحب الزيتون.	
Is there any cheese?	Yes, there is.	هل يوجد أى جبن؟ نعم، يوجد.	
Are there any biscuits?	No, there aren't.	هل يوجد أى بسكويت؟ لا، لا يوجد.	

### Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

► **Mona and Hend are making lunch.**

**Mona:** I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

**Hend:** OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus?

**Mona:** (1)....., but there are some olives.

**Hend:** (2).....

**Mona:** Good. I like peppers. (3).....?

**Hend:** Yes, there is some cheese.

**Mona:** What about figs? (4).....?

**Hend:** No, there aren't any figs.

**Mona:** Are there any raisins?

**Hend:** (5)..... . They are in the fridge.



## 2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب من كتابة  
فقرة بشكل جيد.



### How to write about a dish recipe.

#### كيفية الكتابة عن وصفة أكلة.

- I'd like to tell you about (اسم الأكلة) recipe.
- It's (easy/not easy) to make.
- There are a lot of (المكونات) in it.
- First, (الخطوة الأولى)
- Then, (الخطوة الثانية)
- After that, (الخطوة التالية)
- Finally, (الخطوة الأخيرة)

#### Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns  
in your writing. There should be  
both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة في الجمل. يجب  
أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة  
في الفقرة.

### Example

#### A good recipe

There are a lot of recipes, but I like Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding. There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food. This is the recipe. First, put rice and water in a saucepan and boil them for 20 minutes. Then, add milk slowly and sugar as you stir. After that, put the rice pudding into bowls and put raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top. Finally, put the rice pudding in the fridge.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A recipe of a dish I like"

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What did father and mother eat? القائمة ٣٠٩
- a) Fish. b) Rice with fish.  
 c) Chicken with rice. d) Rice.
2. Where did they have their meal?
- a) At home. b) At school.  
 c) At club. d) At cafe.
3. How many people went for lunch?
- a) Four. b) Three.  
 c) Five. d) Two.
4. Why did they choose this place? Because it was .....
- a) bad b) happy  
 c) nice d) far

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. You can find teaspoons, saucepans and cups in the .....
- a) kitchen b) hall c) playground d) library
2. This recipe is ..... . It's my favourite. القائمة ٣١١
- a) boring b) bad c) perfect d) terrible
3. There are a lot of rice pudding ..... online. القائمة ٣١١
- a) recipes b) instructions c) daughters d) ingredients
4. I don't like raisins. I prefer rice pudding with .....
- a) peppers b) coconut c) olive d) salt
5. I like sweet .....
- a) peppers b) cinnamon c) raisins d) fish
6. What kind of books do you .....
- a) add b) boil c) bring d) prefer
7. Rice, milk, coconut and raisins are the ..... of rice pudding. القائمة ٣١١
- a) instructions b) ingredients c) recipes d) flavours

8. My mum prepared some ..... for me and my friends on our school trip. الحيرة ٢٠٢٠

- a) sandwich
- b) sandwiches'
- c) sandwiches
- d) a sandwich

9. There ..... some water on the table.

- a) are
- b) is
- c) were
- d) has

10. I don't like these cakes because they have ..... sugar in them. WB

- a) too much
- b) too many
- c) enough
- d) a lot of

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. There are any vegetables on the table. (.....) القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

2. There aren't too much tomatoes. (.....) كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٠

3. There aren't enough milk to make hot chocolate. (.....) WB

4. Can I have a apple? (.....) بني سويف ٢٠٢٢

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

السقنة ٢٠٢٢

**"Your favourite food"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Pots, bowls and saucepans are all ..... that mothers use in the kitchen.

- a) food
- b) ingredient
- c) recipe
- d) equipment

2 We can't count .....

- a) cinnamon
- b) children
- c) men
- d) sheep

3 My brother joined ..... university in England.

- a) any
- b) an
- c) a
- d) some



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

amazing (adj)

مذهل

potatoes (n)

بطاطس

fat (n)

دهون

shepherd's pie (n)

فطيرة الراعي

fizzy drinks (n)

مشروبات غازية

spices (n)

توابل

fruit juice (n)

عصير فواكه

stew (n)

حساء/يخنة

onions (n)

بصل

taste (n)

مذاق

### African dishes

أكلات إفريقية

kapenta (n)

كابينتا (نوع سمك)

nyama na irio (n)

نياما نا إريو (اسم أكلة)

koshari (n)

كشري

tagine (n)

طاجين

### المفردات الرئيسية

### Additional Vocabulary

article (n)

مقالة

dry (y ied) (v)

يجفف

body (n)

جسم/جسد

introduce (d) (v)

يقدم

chocolate ice cream (n) آيس كريم شيكولاتة

introduction (n)

مقدمة

cooking pot (n)

إناء للطهي

pasta (n)

مكروننة

discuss (ed) (v)

يناقش

traditional (adj)

تقليدي

### Adjectives to describe the food

صفات تصف الطعام

amazing

مذهل

great

عظيم

delicious

لذيذ

healthy

صحي

fantastic

رائع

wonderful

رائع

### المفردات الإضافية

## Choose and complete:

spices – fizzy – pot – dry

- 1 We shouldn't have a lot of ..... drinks. It's unhealthy.
- 2 My mum added some ..... to the recipe.
- 3 It was raining outside. I should ..... my clothes.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

## Language Expressions

add > to your weight	يضيف إلى وزنك	give > advice on	يعطى نصيحة لـ
catch (caught) > fish	يصاد سمكاً	make > snacks	يعد وجبات خفيفة
cause > illness	تسبب المرض	order > food	يطلب طعاماً
clean > teeth	نظف أسنانك	see > a doctor	يزور طبيباً

## التعبيرات اللغوية

## Prepositions

a glass of	كوب من	careful with	حريص على
a meal with	وجبة بها	good for	مفيد لـ
a piece of	قطعة من	look after	يعتنى بـ
at dinner time	في وقت العشاء	type of	نوع من

## حروف الجر

## Words and Opposites

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار لـ
hungry	جائع	full	ممتلئ

## الكلمات وعكسها

## Choose and complete:

clean – hungry – of – at

- 1 Please, mum. I need a piece ..... cake.
- 2 I can't wait. I'm very .....
- 3 We should ..... our teeth in the morning.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.



## Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



- 1 **It is a good idea to + inf.** (وتستخدم لتقديم النصيحة)  
 • It is a good idea to **eat** between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

- 2 **try + (v + ing) / noun / try to + inf.** يجرب بـ / يحاول أن  
 • I'd like to **try** koshari/eating koshari.  
 • We should **try** to **drink** a glass of milk every day.

- 3 **enjoy + (v + ing) / noun** يستمتع بـ ...  
 • I enjoy **watching** TV. • I enjoy **music**.

## Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.



### Words and Synonyms

### الكلمات ومرادفها


Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص
right	صحيح	correct	صحيح

### Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	مرادفها
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness	تحول الصفة لإسم	illness (n)	مرض
introduce (v)	يقدم	-tion	تحول الفعل لإسم	introduction (n)	مقدمة
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al	تحول الإسم لصفة	traditional (adj)	تقليدي

## B Reading & Listening Skills

**Pre-reading question:** - What are your favourite snacks?

 **Look at the photos and read the introduction. What does the article give advice on?**

*SB page 58*

### Healthy Snacks

Everyone loves **snacks**<sup>(1)</sup>! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks?

#### Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of **fat**<sup>(2)</sup> and **salt**<sup>(3)</sup>. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

#### Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the **sweet taste**<sup>(4)</sup>. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

#### Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.

#### Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. **Fruit juice**<sup>(5)</sup> has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

#### **Note:**

biscuit /bɪskɪt/      taste /teɪst/

#### Post-reading question:

- What types of snacks should we eat a lot?

### Lesson 3

(1) وجبات خفيفة

(2) دهون

(3) ملح

(4) مذاق حلو

(5) عصير فواكه



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

**Pre-listening question:**

- Should we drink a lot of water? Why/ Why not?

 **Listen to the interview and check your answers to Ex 6.**

**SB page 59**

**Presenter** It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't forget about what we drink. Dr. Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr. Randa, what should we drink?

(1) دهون

(2) مشروبات

(3) مشروبات غازية

**Dr. Randa** Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great because it hasn't got any fat<sup>(1)</sup> or sugar.

**Presenter** OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us?

**Dr. Randa** Some drinks<sup>(2)</sup> have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

**Presenter** So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks<sup>(3)</sup> don't have any sugar. Are they okay?

**Dr. Randa** No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

**Presenter** So, we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are any drinks good for our teeth?

**Dr. Randa** Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day.



**Post-listening question:**

- What do you think of fizzy drinks?

### Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite food?

## Lesson 4

 Read the descriptions and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 60

### Food in Africa



Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

**Marwa**

(1) طاجن

(2) حساء/يخنة

(3) توابل

(4) مذهب



I live in Morocco. Tagine<sup>(1)</sup> is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew<sup>(2)</sup> with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices<sup>(3)</sup>.

The taste is amazing<sup>(4)</sup>! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

**Hamza**



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio<sup>(5)</sup> for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful<sup>(6)</sup>! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

**Makena**



Kapenta<sup>(7)</sup> is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions<sup>(8)</sup>. It is great!

**Bradley**

(5) نياما نا ايرو (اسم أكلة)

(6) رائع

(7) كابينتا (اسم أكلة)

(8) بصل

### Note:

tagine /tæ'zi:n/    stew /stju:/    spice /spais/  
Zimbabwe /zim'ba:bwɪ/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

### Post-reading question:

- Which meal would you like to try? Why?

 Listen and tick (✓) the ingredients for shepherd's pie. **WB page 112**



In England, people often have a traditional meal called **shepherd's pie**<sup>(1)</sup>. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is **wonderful**<sup>(2)</sup>.

My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream.

فطيرة الراعي (1)

رائع (2)



**Note:**

shepherd /ʃepərd/ pie /paɪ/

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

**Issues**

**Work in pairs. Discuss these situations. What should we do? What shouldn't we do?**

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش تلك المواقف. ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟ وماذا يجب ألا نفعل؟

1. I like sweet food, but I don't want to eat too many cakes or biscuits.

- You shouldn't eat too many cakes or biscuits.

2. I want to look after my teeth.

3. I'm not hungry at dinner time.

4. I eat a lot of olives because they are good for me.

- You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.
- Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your weight.



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't drink lots of ..... as they are not good for your body. الخبره ٢٠٢٣  
 a) fizzy drinks      b) milk      c) apple juice      d) water
2. Koshari is a famous Egyptian ..... فنا ٢٠٢٢  
 a) dish      b) fish      c) fig      d) fan
3. Cakes and chocolate have a lot of ..... and sugar. المغولنه ٢٠٢٢  
 a) meat      b) fat      c) spices      d) vegetables
4. Tagine is a traditional ..... السرقيه ٢٠٢٢  
 a) sport      b) hobby      c) drink      d) meal
5. Please, do not take any ..... between breakfast and lunch.  
 a) pots      b) articles      c) snacks      d) snakes
6. .... give food a good taste. المغولنه ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Cultures      b) Spaces      c) Spices      d) Flavours
7. I always eat ..... of fruit at lunchtime. مصنات ٢٠٢٣  
 a) prices      b) prizes      c) spices      d) pieces
8. Fruit ..... has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it.  
 a) fan      b) fizzy      c) fat      d) juice
9. She is still weak after her .....  
 a) advice      b) pie      c) illness      d) situation
10. Beans and koshari are ..... meals in Egypt.  
 a) bad      b) unknown      c) unusual      d) traditional
11. People of Kenya often have meat ..... for lunch.  
 a) glass      b) article      c) pot      d) stew
12. We eat when we are .....  
 a) hungry      b) full      c) careful      d) wrong
13. We went to the lake to ..... fish.  
 a) clean      b) give      c) catch      d) cause

# Time to Practise



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kapenta is a type of .....  
a) meat                      b) fruit                      c) vegetable                      d) fish القائمة ٢٠٢٢
2. Koshari is a delicious meal with .....  
a) rice                      b) fruit                      c) fish                      d) potatoes القائمة ٢٠٢٢
3. Can I have a ..... of cake, please?  
a) cup                      b) piece                      c) bottle                      d) saucepan القائمة ٢٠٢٢
4. When he drank the juice, he liked the ..... very much.  
a) paste                      b) test                      c) taste                      d) shoes
5. Water hasn't got any ..... or sugar.  
a) glass                      b) pan                      c) pot                      d) fat
6. Drinks with a lot of sugar are bad for our .....  
a) pieces                      b) pies                      c) bodies                      d) houses
7. We should try to drink a ..... of milk every day.  
a) glass                      b) pot                      c) bowl                      d) piece
8. We love chicken and rice. They are .....!  
a) salty                      b) bad                      c) scary                      d) delicious
9. After washing the clothes, we should put them in the sun to .....  
a) boil                      b) dry                      c) cool                      d) heat
10. We can ..... with our tongues. القائمة ٢٠٢٠  
a) smell                      b) taste                      c) touch                      d) see
11. Everyone loves snacks, but some snacks are bad ..... us.  
a) with                      b) at                      c) to                      d) for
12. The doctor gave me ..... on the food I should eat.  
a) advise                      b) advice                      c) device                      d) devise
13. Tagine is the name of a meal and a cooking ..... in Morocco. القائمة ٢٠٢٠  
a) piece                      b) pot                      c) body                      d) glass

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

## C Language

### 1 Giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة

• We use **should/shouldn't** to say that something is or is not a good idea.

- عند إعطاء النصيحة نستخدم (should) (ينبغي أن) أو (shouldn't) (لا ينبغي أن) ثم الفعل فى المصدر.

#### Affirmative

Subject + **should** + inf.

- We **should drink** a lot of water.
- We **should eat** healthy food.

#### Negative

Subject + **shouldn't** + inf.

- You **shouldn't eat** too many crisps.
- You **should not drink** too much fruit juice.

#### Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 Ali is ill, he shouldn't see a doctor. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شئ مفيد.
- 2 We should ate healthy food. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (eat) لوجود should التى يأتى بعدها مصدر.

### Yes/No questions:

**Should** + subject + inf. ....?

- A: **Should** we **eat** healthy snacks? B: **Yes**, you **should**.
- A: **Should** he **play** video games tonight? B: **No**, he **shouldn't**.

#### لاحظ

تستخدم **should** لتقديم الاقتراحات أو تقديم الرأي:

- We **should** visit our grandparents tonight.

#### Got it ?

Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1 Should we drank lots of fizzy drinks? (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (drink) لوجود should التى يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.
- 2 No, we should make noise in the library. (.....)  
- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لوجود No الدالة على النفى.





### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't ..... it. القائمة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) touched                      b) touches                      c) touch                      d) touching
2. You ..... never leave without having breakfast.  
 a) shouldn't                      b) should                      c) will                      d) won't
3. People should ..... between two and four pieces of fruit a day.  
 a) eat                      b) eating                      c) eats                      d) ate
4. .... eat a lot of vegetables.  
 a) We have                      b) Have we                      c) Should we                      d) We should
5. You should ..... careful with the food you eat.  
 a) am                      b) is                      c) are                      d) be
6. We ..... drink too much fruit juice. It is unhealthy.  
 a) should not                      b) should                      c) must                      d) aren't
7. What types of snacks ..... eat a lot?  
 a) we should                      b) should we                      c) should                      d) we
8. You should always ..... your mother.  
 a) helping                      b) to help                      c) help                      d) helped
9. You ..... ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.  
 a) should                      b) shouldn't                      c) have                      d) haven't
10. We ..... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it. القائمة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) should                      b) shouldn't                      c) must                      d) can

### 2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should cleaning your teeth in the morning. (.....) القائمة ٢٠٢٣
2. We should study hard for our exams? (.....) القائمة ٢٠٢١
3. They should drinks healthy water. (.....) كسر الشرح ٢٠٢٤
4. Hany should eat snacks in the classroom. (.....) الشرح ٢٠٢٠
5. That's a fantastic book. You should reading it. (.....)
6. You should eat too much chocolate. (.....) القائمة ٢٠٢٣

## D Skills



### Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



#### 1. How to write about healthy snacks. كيفية الكتابة عن الوجبات الصحية الخفيفة.

- Everyone loves snacks.
- Some snacks are bad for us.
- Fruit is very good for us.
- Vegetables don't have much sugar.

#### Writing tips

Use linking words to connect the sentences and make the paragraph a well-knit whole.

استخدم الروابط للربط بين الجمل ولعمل فقرة محكمة كلياً.

#### Example

##### Healthy snacks/food

Everyone loves snacks! **But** some snacks are bad for us. It is OK to eat crisps **and** cakes sometimes, **but** you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, **so** we should eat a lot of them. We should be careful, **even** with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, **so** we should not drink too much of it.

#### 2. How to write a review of a café.

#### كيفية كتابة نقد عن مقهى

- I went to a café in Cairo (الوقت).
- We had (الطعام).
- We had (الحلو) for dessert.
- I went with (الأشخاص).
- The food was (صفاته).
- I enjoyed (الحلو) most.

#### Example

##### A review of a café

I would like to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Alexandria last Friday with my dad, mother and brother. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. It was wonderful watching the clean water of the sea. I had my favourite meal, chicken. I love chicken, but this was different. It was delicious. All my family had fish from the sea. We all liked our food. We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day.

**1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

To be healthy, our bodies need food, exercise and enough sleep. Food gives us energy, but we should choose the healthy kind of food. The good food should contain meat, rice, beans, fruit and vegetables. They build our bodies and make us strong. Fruit and vegetables give us vitamins to stop illness. They also give us fibre which helps us digest our food. Exercises help us to be fit. Enough sleep helps us to rest and renew our energy.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a title to this text. ....
2. What should good food contain? .....
3. Why do you think we should eat healthy food? .....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "us" refers to .....  
 a) animals      b) birds      c) people      d) things
5. "....." means to do something again after a pause, usually with more energy.  
 a) Renew      b) Digest      c) Contain      d) Fit
6. Exercises help us to be .....  
 a) fat      b) fit      c) fake      d) fool

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I don't like this type ..... fish. It's salty.  
 a) at      b) on      c) of      d) from
2. Eating lots of fats and sugar ..... much to your weight.  
 a) adds      b) makes      c) catches      d) orders
7. Chop the vegetables into ..... and eat them with your breakfast.  
 a) spears      b) species      c) spices      d) pieces
3. .... is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes.  
 a) Cheese      b) Koshari      c) Kapenta      d) Milk
4. Eating unhealthy food ..... illness.  
 a) causes      b) catches      c) adds      d) cleans
5. When we are ill, we should ..... a doctor.  
 a) give      b) cause      c) see      d) give

6. I look ..... my little sister when my mother is out.  
 a) for                      b) after                      c) at                      d) up
7. Crisps every day! That's very bad for you. You ..... stop eating them!  
 a) should                      b) shouldn't  
 c) mustn't                      d) should never
8. You ..... study hard to get high marks.  
 a) should                      b) shouldn't                      c) mustn't                      d) doesn't
9. You should ..... that new film. It's great!  
 a) seeing                      b) to see                      c) sees                      d) see

الفصل ٢ - ٢

**3 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. It's a beautiful day. We shouldn't walk to the park. (.....)
2. Children shouldn't running in the street. (.....)
3. We shouldn't be very careful when we cook in the kitchen. (.....)
4. We should go to school on time? (.....)

**4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

الموضوع ٢٠٢٢

**"Food you should or shouldn't eat"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Challenging Questions**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- 1 People should eat between two and four pieces of fruit ..... day.  
 a) an                      b) in                      c) a                      d) at
- 2 We should try to drink a glass of milk .....  
 a) every day                      b) everyday                      c) every                      d) day
- 3 We ..... never eat too many sweets. They are bad for our teeth.  
 a) should                      b) should to                      c) shouldn't                      d) shouldn't to



## A Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية			
assistant (n)	مساعد/ بائع	dessert (n)	حلوى
café (n)	مقهى	menu (n)	قائمة طعام
chef (n)	شيف/ كبير الطهاة	waiter (n)	نادل/ جرسون
customer (n)	زبون		

### Additional Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية			
basbousa (n)	بسبوسة	look (ed) like	يشبه
cheese pizza (n)	بيتزا بالجبنة	real (adj)	حقيقي
go back (v)	يعود/ يرجع	restaurant (n)	مطعم
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	review (n)	نقد
kunafa (n)	كنافة	tomato pizza (n)	بيتزا بالطماطم

### Check Point

#### Choose and complete:

chef – menu – review – kunafa

- 1 My uncle is a famous .....
- 2 I read a ..... about that restaurant.
- 3 My favourite dessert is .....

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للمفردات الرئيسية  
والإضافية.

### Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية			
look > nice/delicious	يبدو لطيفا/ لذيذا	make > a list	يقوم بعمل قائمة
write > a list	يكتب قائمة	make > sure	يتأكد

## Prepositions

for lunch

على الغداء

on the sea

حروف الجر

في البحر

look out of

ينظر من

on the water

في الماء

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
write	يكتب	wrote	written

## Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
small	صغير	large	كبير

Check Point

Choose and complete: looks – for – on – make

- 1 I bought some bread ..... lunch.
- 2 Students should ..... sure from their answers.
- 3 This tagine ..... delicious.

يهدف هذا التدريب  
لقياس فهمك  
للتعبيرات اللغوية  
وحروف الجر.

## B Reading & Listening Skills

### Lesson 5

#### Pre-listening question:

- What kind of pizza do you like?

 Listen to the people in a café. Tick (✓) the food that the customer buys.

*SB page 60*

**Assistant** Hello. What would you like today?

**Customer** I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please.

**Assistant** OK. Anything else?

**Customer** Yes, a salad, please.

**Assistant** Small or large?

**Customer** Small, please.

**Assistant** And would you like any drinks?

**Customer** Have you got any fruit juice?

**Assistant** Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

**Customer** I'd like an orange juice, please.

**Assistant** Is that everything?

**Customer** Yes, it is.

**Assistant** That's 105 pounds, please.

**Customer** Thank you, here you are.

#### Post-listening question:

- What kind of pizza would the customer like to have?



### Pre-reading question:

- Did you try eating in a café? What did you like about it?

 Read the review. What did Sara like most about her visit?

## City Café



**Great visit!** ★★★★★

Review by: Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city.)

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!! 😊

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

### Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why did Sara's mum have a salad?
- 2 Who is Ashraf?



### Pre-reading question:

- What is your favourite meal?

 Put the article in the correct order.

WB page 114



1. I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)
2. I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.
3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.
4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

### Post-reading question:

- Why did they like the café?

### Pre-reading question:

- What kind of food do you like?

 Read this review. Circle the topic sentence. Underline the supporting sentences.



A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

### Post-reading question:

- Why was the fish very fresh?

## Project

Write a recipe for a meal or snack.

اكتب وصفة لوجبة (رئيسية) أو وجبة خفيفة.

1. Choose a meal or a snack. Write a list of ingredients.
2. Make a list of instructions. Make sure that you:
  - Say what to do for each part of the recipe.
  - Put the instructions in the correct order.
3. Write your recipe. You can add pictures if you like.



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter gave me the ..... to choose food. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 a) list                      b) book                      c) menu                      d) dish
2. I ate a small pizza, but my brother ordered a ..... one.  
 a) tiny                      b) little                      c) small                      d) large
3. A/An ..... is the person who buys things from a shop.  
 a) waiter                      b) customer                      c) assistant                      d) chef
4. He cooks food in a restaurant. He is a ..... القريبة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) teacher                      b) doctor                      c) farmer                      d) chef
5. The ..... works in a restaurant. القريبة ٢٠٢٣  
 a) waiter                      b) water                      c) nurse                      d) customer
6. We went to a nice ..... to have our lunch out.  
 a) classroom                      b) playground                      c) library                      d) restaurant
7. My father took us to a ..... for lunch.  
 a) café                      b) farm                      c) field                      d) hall
8. We chose this café for lunch because it ..... very nice.  
 a) saw                      b) looked                      c) made                      d) did
9. The tomato pizza has a good .....  
 a) taste                      b) test                      c) toast                      d) tasty
10. I love looking ..... the window and watching the cars in the streets.  
 a) out of                      b) out                      c) of                      d) with
11. Ashraf and I both had rice ..... lunch.  
 a) at                      b) for                      c) on                      d) with
12. We ..... the food we want to eat in the restaurant from the menu.  
 a) boil                      b) cook                      c) add                      d) choose
13. I'd like to eat a cheese and tomato .....  
 a) pizza                      b) juice                      c) soup                      d) bread



## Speaking

### Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام بالمقهى

**Situation** ما يقال في هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

← online
📺 📞 ⋮

What would you like? ماذا تريد؟

I'd like pizza.  أريد بيتزا.

Have you got any salad?  هل لديكم سلطة؟

Yes, we have. Small or large? نعم لدينا. أتريد طبقاً كبيراً أم صغيراً؟

Large, please.  طبقاً كبيراً من فضلك.

Is that everything? هل هذا كل ما تريد؟

Yes, thank you.  نعم، شكراً لك.

Anything else? هل تريد شيئاً آخر؟

No, thanks.  لا، شكراً.

That's 100 pounds. الحساب مائة جنيه.

Thank you, here you are.  شكراً، تفضل.



Complete the following dialogue:

٢٠٢٣ بلس

▶ **Amgad is ordering food in a restaurant.**

**Waiter** : Hello, how can I help you?

**Amgad** : Hello, (1).....

**Waiter** : Here's the menu.

**Amgad** : (2).....

**Waiter** : With or without rice?

**Amgad** : (3).....

**Waiter** : Anything else?

**Amgad** : No ,thank you, . (4).....?

**Waiter** : That's 80 pounds ,please.

**Amgad** : (5).....

### Time to Practise



Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **A customer is at a restaurant to have his lunch.**

**Assistant** : What would you like?

**Customer** : (1).....

**Assistant** : And would you like any drinks?

**Customer** : (2).....?

**Assistant** : Yes, we've got tea and coffee.

**Customer** : (3).....

**Assistant** : Coffee! OK.

**Customer** : (4).....?

**Assistant** : That's 110 pounds, please.

**Customer** : (5).....

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

A customer wants to eat a chicken pizza.

**Waiter** : How can I help you?

**Customer** : (1).....?

**Waiter** : Yes, we've got a chicken pizza. Would you like a small or large one?

**Customer** : (2).....

**Waiter** : Would you like a drink?

**Customer** : Yes, please. (3).....

**Waiter** : OK.

**Customer** : (4).....?

**Waiter** : That's 150 pounds.

**Customer** : (5).....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The waiter asked me what food I'd like to .....  
 a) say                      b) tell                      c) bring                      d) order
- Mum likes eating salad. It is .....  
 a) healthy                      b) unhealthy                      c) bad                      d) weak
- We catch fish from the .....  
 a) lake                      b) mountain                      c) forest                      d) cave
- When we sat on the table, a waiter offered us the .....  
 a) diagram                      b) poster                      c) list                      d) menu
- I like pizza. It's a delicious .....  
 a) mail                      b) male                      c) meal                      d) mile
- Tagine is a ..... with meat, vegetables fruit and spices.  
 a) straw                      b) stew                      c) rice                      d) sugar
- We went to the ..... yesterday to have our dinner. It was great.  
 a) café                      b) coffee                      c) cinema                      d) park
- We should ..... lots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it.  
 a) had                      b) having                      c) has                      d) have

9. Lama feels tired. She ..... have a rest.

a) needs

b) should

c) has

d) does

10. What kinds of food should we .....?

a) eating

b) eat

c) ate

d) eaten

### 3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Students shouldn't making noise in the library. (.....)

(.....)

2. The doctor told him that he shouldn't eat less. He's too fat. (.....)

(.....)

3. You shouldn't help your little brother. (.....)

(.....)

4. **A:** I'm very ill. **B:** You should go to school today. (.....)

(.....)

### 4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

**"A review of a restaurant you visited"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

1 Read this review if you want to ..... sure that this café is amazing.

a) have

b) take

c) do

d) make

2 My father is very ill. He ..... have unhealthy food.

a) shouldn't

b) should

c) can

d) must

## Vocabulary

amazing	مذهل
peppers	فلفل
bowl	سلطانية
raisins	زبيب
recipe	وصفة طعام
cinnamon	قرفة
rice pudding	ارز بودنج (حلو)
coconut	جوز الهند
salt	ملح
saucepan	قدر صغير
snack	وجبة خفيفة
fat	دهون
spices	توابل
stew	حساء/يخنة
fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
sweet taste	مذاق حلو
healthy	صحي
tagine	طاجين
hummus	حمص
teaspoon	ملعقة شاي
ingredients	مقادير/مكونات
olives	زيتون

## Language

- 1** Some/ any: بعض/ أي
- (some)**
- There are **some nuts**.
  - There is **some cheese**.
- (any)**
- Are there **any chips**?
  - There isn't **any cheese**.
- 2** a lot of / enough / too many / too much: كثير من / كافي / كثير جدًا
- a lot of / enough** + اسم جمع / اسم يُعد / اسم لا يُعد / اسم لا يُعد
- My little brother eats **a lot of sugar** every day and that is too bad.
  - There aren't **enough chairs** for everyone to sit on.
- too many** + اسم جمع / اسم يُعد / اسم لا يُعد
- too much** + اسم لا يُعد / اسم لا يُعد
- There are **too many raisins**.
  - There's **too much sugar**.
- 3** Giving advice: إعطاء النصيحة
- We **should** drink a lot of water.
  - You **shouldn't** eat too many crisps.

## Skills

- 1** Ask and answer questions about food:
- What food do you like?
    - I like salad and meat.
  - What food don't you like?
    - I don't like olives.
  - Is there any cheese?
    - Yes, there is.
  - Are there any biscuits?
    - No, there aren't.
- 2** Ordering food in a café:
- What would you like?
    - I'd like pizza.
  - Have you got any salad?
    - Yes, we have. Small or large?
  - Is that everything?
    - Yes, thank you.
  - Anything else?
    - No, thanks.
  - That's 100 pounds.
    - Thank you, here you are.





## A Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. What did you have in the café?
 

a) Fish.	b) Basbousa.	c) Koshari.	d) Kunafa.
----------	--------------	-------------	------------
2. What did your cousins have?
 

a) Fish.	b) Basbousa.	c) Koshari.	d) Kunafa.
----------	--------------	-------------	------------
3. How was the food?
 

a) Hot.	b) Spicy.	c) Salty.	d) Delicious.
---------	-----------	-----------	---------------
4. Who liked the food?
 

a) You.	b) Your family.	c) Your cousins.	d) All of us.
---------	-----------------	------------------	---------------

## B Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Sama is asking Nada about her favourite dish.**

**Sama** : Hi, Nada!

**Nada** : Hi, Sama!

**Sama** : (1).....?

**Nada** : Molokhia. What about you?

**Sama** : I love Koshari.

**Nada** : (3).....?

**Sama** : Yes, of course. Rice, pasta, hummus and lentils.

**Nada** : Good. (4).....

**Sama** : Will you try it?

**Nada** : (5).....

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Africa has a lot of interesting kinds of food. Egypt, for example is famous for "koshari". It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta, tomato sauce and fried onions. It's very popular; many people like it. In Morocco, there is a traditional meal called

"tagine", it's a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing, the name of tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. In Zimbabwe, people often eat "kapenta". It's a type of fish which people dry in the sun. They often cook it with tomatoes and onions. It's great. In Kenya, people like "nyama na irio"; it's a stew with meat and potatoes. People there often make it for dinner. Tell me, which food you would like to try. For me, I like most traditional Egyptian food: koshari, falafel and kebab. All have special flavours.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think people in Egypt like koshari?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "type" means .....

- a) piece                      b) snack                      c) kind                      d) slice

5. People of Kenya often have meat stew for .....

- a) breakfast                      b) dinner                      c) lunch                      d) break

6. The writer likes koshari which has got rice, pasta and ..... sauce.

- a) potato                      b) meat                      c) vegetable                      d) tomato

**D Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Roz Bel laban is the name for the Egyptian rice .....

- a) falafel                      b) pudding                      c) ful medames                      d) koshari

2. Which of these can you boil water in?

- a) Ball.                      b) Cup.                      c) Glass.                      d) Saucepan.

3. Most children love food that has sweet .....

- a) kind                      b) type                      c) taste                      d) test

4. Waiter: That's 150 pounds. ....: Here you are.

- a) Helper                      b) Customer                      c) Seller                      d) Worker

5. We should ..... our teeth before we sleep.  
 a) give                    b) catch                    c) add                    d) clean
6. We bought a lot of vegetables and made a nice .....  
 a) chips                    b) salad                    c) kunafa                    d) rice pudding
7. I'd like to have fish and rice ..... lunch today.  
 a) in                    b) of                    c) for                    d) on
8. There ..... some water in the bottle.                    كم السج ٢٠٢٤  
 a) isn't                    b) is                    c) aren't                    d) are
9. Yara likes to eat ..... meat for dinner.  
 a) any                    b) some                    c) a                    d) an
10. She's always tired. She ..... not go to bed late every night.  
 a) hasn't                    b) shouldn't                    c) should                    d) must

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. She has any apple.                    (.....)                    الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. Is there any mobile phones?                    (.....)                    الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
3. He can't sleep as he has too many coffee.                    (.....)                    القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
4. We should has a lot of water a day.                    (.....)

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

**"A healthy meal you had"**

**WB**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

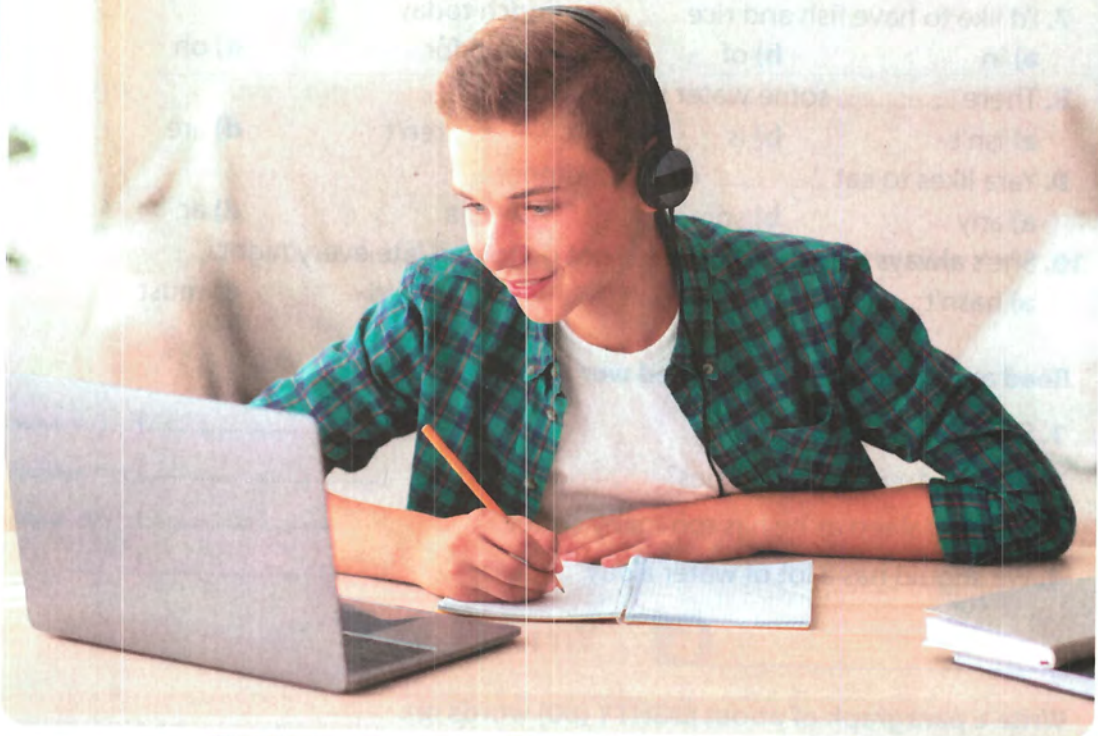
.....

.....

.....

.....


## Review B



**Units 4, 5 & 6**

## Pre-reading question:

- What do you do at Sham El-Nessim?

 Match paragraphs 1–4 with the headings a–d.

## Sham El-Nessim

### Lesson 1

#### 1. What and when is it?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year.

We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

(1) فسيخ



#### 2. What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a **park** or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and **swim** in the sea.



#### 3. A recipe

On this day, we eat **a lot** of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy **feseekh**<sup>(1)</sup>?

Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat **too much**!

#### 4. What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we **went** to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo? We **are painting** eggs! We always do this. We **didn't** see our cousins last year, but we made a video call. It was fun to talk to them on the **laptop**.

Do you know any other special food? Click on the **icon** at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a **recipe** for it.

#### Post-reading questions:

- 1 How do you eat feseekh?
- 2 What did you do at Sham El-Nessim last year?

**Pre-listening question:**

- How do you make pancakes?

 **Listen and number the pictures in the correct order.**

SB page 65



**Speaker:** In the UK<sup>(1)</sup>, many people eat pancakes<sup>(2)</sup> at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes!

Cook each pancake for 2 to 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake.

Eat your pancakes with honey<sup>(3)</sup> and nuts or with sugar and lemon juice.

Hmm, they are delicious.

(1) المملكة المتحدة

(2) الكعك المحلى

(3) عسل النحل

**Post-listening question:**

- What do you think of pancakes?

 **Read the email and complete Judy's shopping list. WB page 116**

**Hi Judy,**

The family party is on Saturday. There are ten people.

Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles.

Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

**Many thanks**

**Mona**



Scan & Listen



# End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 & 119

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

- Shorouk goes to school ..... .
 

a) alone	b) with Lubna only
c) with her mother	d) with Lubna and Alaa
- Shorouk is in the ..... stage.
 

a) nursery	b) preparatory
c) secondary	d) university
- Shorouk's parents work in ..... .
 

a) the same place	b) different places
c) the same school	d) a factory
- ..... work in a hospital.
 

a) Alaa's parents	b) Lubna's parents
c) Shorouk's parents	d) No parents

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Nesma and Reem go to the school library.**

**Reem** : Good morning, Nesma, when will we start doing our research?

**Nesma** : During the break.

**Reem** : Great. Where (1).....?

**Nesma** : In the school library.

**Reem** : Are (2).....?

**Nesma** : Of course, I'm ready.

**Reem** : Is it easy to find the books we need?

**Nesma** : (3).....

**Reem** : Who will help us there?

**Nesma** : (4).....

**Reem** : I hope (5).....



## Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects?

.....

2. Why does she want to speak English?

.....

3. Is Mona right to use technology? Why?

.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to .....

a) Cairo

b) technology

c) a river

d) summer school

5. Where is Mona now?

a) In Egypt.

b) In England.

c) In Uganda.

d) In Cambridge.

6. What does Mona use to practise her English?

a) Her tablet.

b) Her phone.

c) Her laptop.

d) a and b.

7. Mona is talking about her .....

a) pets and hobbies

b) life and friends

c) boss at work

d) travels to Uganda





9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online .....

- a) 3D printer
- b) diary
- c) mouse
- d) laptop

10. Why don't we ..... swimming next week?

- a) go
- b) do
- c) make
- d) see

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? (.....)

2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (.....)

3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (.....)

4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (.....)

**E Writing**

**6 Write an email of 80 words about a typical day in your life.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Listening Texts

## Unit 1 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris. He works very hard. My mother is a teacher. My two brothers and I go to the same school.

### Unit 1 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Heidi is an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in a small house. Heidi sleeps in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk.

## Unit 2 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping.

### Unit 2 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

In the USA, there is a lot of snow in winter. The children travel to school on a snowmobile. It's cold, but it's fast- and fun!

## Unit 3 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My best friend is Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games. His favourite subject is English.

### Unit 3 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

My favourite book is called "*Gulliver's Travels*", by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm.

## Unit 4 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

I love technology! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

## Unit 4 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Rana is my best friend. Her favourite subject is computer studies. She likes technology. She spends a lot of time on her laptop playing video games.

## Unit 5 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Last winter, Ragab travelled to Aswan. He travelled with his family. They took a train. It was a fantastic journey. He bought many souvenirs from the shops there.

### Unit 5 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

I went to Jordan by plane last holiday. It was great. We stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We swam every day. We visited a lot of famous places.

## Unit 6 Test yourself 1 & 2

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Last week, I went with my mum, dad and my little sister to a cafe near the river. I had chicken with rice, but my parents had rice with fish. My dad chose this place because it looked nice.

### Unit 6 Al-Adwaa Test

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

I had my favourite meal, koshari in a café for lunch. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food. It was delicious.

### End of Term Practice

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Shorouk is 12 years old. She is in preparatory one. She goes to school with her friends Lubna and Alaa. Shooruk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

# Challenging Questions Answers

## Unit 1

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) same                      2. d) have  
3. c) We

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. Are                          2. good at  
3. doesn't have              4. is

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) have                      2. c) find  
3. b) on

## Unit 2

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) after                      2. a) never does  
3. c) Sometimes

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. today's                      2. chemist's  
3. They

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) when                      2. a) quite  
3. d) have

## Unit 3

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) description              2. d) is able  
3. a) have

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) interesting              2. c) adjectives  
3. a) shout

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) by                          2. b) called  
3. c) fun

## Unit 4

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) design                      2. d) laptop computers  
3. c) a

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. b) have                      2. d) is using  
3. c) are always

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) answer                      2. a) when  
3. b) don't

## Unit 5

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) echo                      2. a) call out  
3. c) called

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) get to                      2. a) in  
3. b) didn't go

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) snails                      2. a) for example  
3. d) were you

## Unit 6

### Lessons 1 & 2

1. d) equipment              2. a) cinnamon  
3. c) a

### Lessons 3 & 4

1. c) a                              2. a) every day  
3. a) should

### Lessons 5 & 6

1. d) make  
2. a) shouldn't